

*Allen-Bradley*

## Logix5000 Controllers

1756 ControlLogix, 1769 CompactLogix, 1789 SoftLogix,  
1794 FlexLogix, PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix

System Reference



**Rockwell**  
**Automation**

## **Important User Information**

Because of the variety of uses for the products described in this publication, those responsible for the application and use of these products must satisfy themselves that all necessary steps have been taken to assure that each application and use meets all performance and safety requirements, including any applicable laws, regulations, codes and standards. In no event will Allen-Bradley be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damage resulting from the use or application of these products.

Any illustrations, charts, sample programs, and layout examples shown in this publication are intended solely for purposes of example. Since there are many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Allen-Bradley does not assume responsibility or liability (to include intellectual property liability) for actual use based upon the examples shown in this publication.

Reproduction of the contents of this copyrighted publication, in whole or part, without written permission of Rockwell Automation, is prohibited.

## ***Summary of Changes***

---

This version of the Logix5000 Controllers System Reference Manual corresponds to version 15 of the controllers. Revision bars (shown in the left margin of this page) indicate changed information. Changes made to this manual include:

- Addition of 1769-L32C and 1769-L35CR CompactLogix controllers for ControlNet
- Addition of DriveLogix5730 controller for PowerFlex 700S
- Addition of PSC, PCMD, POVR, PFL, PCLF, PXRQ, PRNP, PPD, PATT and PDET phase manager instructions
- The 1794-L33, 1769-L20, and 1769-L30 controllers have been removed

**Notes:**

## Logix Controllers

### Chapter 1

Logix Family of Controllers. . . . .	1-1
ControlLogix Controllers (1756-L6x, L55Mxx). . . . .	1-2
CompactLogix Controllers (1769-Lxx) . . . . .	1-4
FlexLogix Controllers (1794-L34). . . . .	1-10
SoftLogix5800 Controllers (1789-L10, -L30, -L60) . . . . .	1-12
PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5720 . . . . .	1-14
PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5730 . . . . .	1-16
Controller Comparison . . . . .	1-18
Select the Operating Mode of the Controller . . . . .	1-21
Non-Volatile Memory . . . . .	1-22
Create a Project . . . . .	1-24
Controller Organizer. . . . .	1-25
Controller Tasks. . . . .	1-26
Controller Tags . . . . .	1-30
Aliases. . . . .	1-33
Choose a Programming Language . . . . .	1-34

---

<b>Sequential Function Charts</b>	<b>Chapter 2</b>	
	Editing an SFC . . . . .	2-4
	Action Qualifiers . . . . .	2-10
	How Do You Want to Use the Action? . . . . .	2-12
	Configure the Execution of an SFC . . . . .	2-13
<b>Structured Text</b>	<b>Chapter 3</b>	
	Structured Text Syntax . . . . .	3-1
	Assignments. . . . .	3-4
	Expressions . . . . .	3-6
	Determine the order of execution . . . . .	3-12
	Instructions . . . . .	3-13
	Constructs . . . . .	3-15
Comments . . . . .	3-25	

---

	<b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Function Block Diagram</b>	Editing a Function Block Diagram. . . . .	4-2
	Order of Execution . . . . .	4-5
	Resolve a Loop . . . . .	4-7
	Resolve Data Flow Between Two Blocks. . . . .	4-9
	Create a One Scan Delay . . . . .	4-10
	Summary . . . . .	4-10
	Define Program/Operator Control. . . . .	4-11
	<b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>Relay Ladder</b>	Relay Ladder Logic. . . . .	5-1
	Editing Relay Ladder . . . . .	5-3
	Rung Condition . . . . .	5-4

---

<b>Accessing System Values</b>	<b>Chapter 6</b>
	System Values Stored by the Controller . . . . . 6-1
	Monitor Status Flags . . . . . 6-2
	Get and Set System Data (Status Information) . . . . . 6-3
	Available Status Information - GSV/SSV Objects . . . . . 6-5
	Determine Controller Memory Information . . . . . 6-26
<b>Communicate with Other Controllers</b>	<b>Chapter 7</b>
	Communication Options . . . . . 7-1
	Produce and Consume a Tag . . . . . 7-2
	Send a Message . . . . . 7-9
	Map PLC/SLC Addresses . . . . . 7-13
	Send a Message to Multiple Devices . . . . . 7-15
<b>Forcing</b>	<b>Chapter 8</b>
	What You Can Force . . . . . 8-1
	Force I/O . . . . . 8-4
	Step Through a Transition . . . . . 8-7
	Force an SFC . . . . . 8-7



---

	<b>Chapter 9</b>	
<b>System Faults</b>	Controller Faults . . . . .	9-1
	Major Faults . . . . .	9-2
	Major Fault Codes . . . . .	9-7
	Minor Faults . . . . .	9-10
	Minor Fault Codes . . . . .	9-13
	User-Defined Faults . . . . .	9-15
	<b>Chapter 10</b>	
<b>Data Structures</b>	Common Structures . . . . .	10-1
	<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Instruction Set</b>	. . . . .	11-1



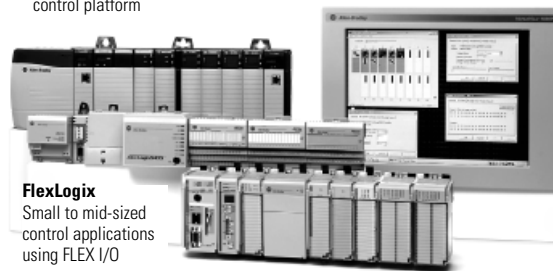
## Logix Family of Controllers

Rockwell Automation Logix Platforms provide a single integrated control architecture for discrete, drives, motion, and process control. The integrated Logix architecture provides a common control engine, programming software environment, and communication support across multiple hardware platforms. All Logix controllers operate with a multitasking, multiprocessing operating system and support the same set of instructions in multiple programming languages. One RSLogix 5000 programming software package programs all Logix controllers. And all Logix controllers incorporate the NetLinx architecture to communicate via EtherNet/IP, ControlNet, and DeviceNet networks.

**PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix**  
An integrated drives and control solution



**ControlLogix**  
High-performance, multi-processing control platform



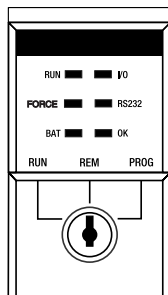
**FlexLogix**  
Small to mid-sized control applications using FLEX I/O

**CompactLogix**  
Compact I/O and control for smaller applications

**SoftLogix5800**  
High-performance, PC-based control

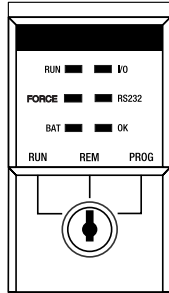
## ControlLogix Controllers (1756-L6x, L55Mxx)

### Front Panel:



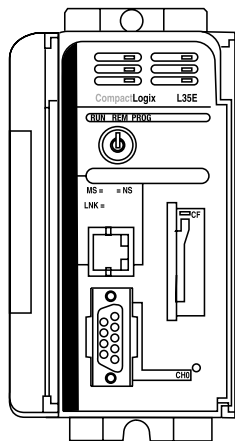
Indicator:	Color:	Description:
RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
	solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There are <i>no</i> devices in the I/O configuration of the controller.</li> <li>• The controller does <i>not</i> contain a project (controller memory is empty).</li> </ul>
	solid green	The controller is communicating with all the devices in its I/O configuration.
	flashing green	One or more devices in the I/O configuration of the controller are <i>not</i> responding.
	flashing red	The chassis is bad. Replace the chassis.
FORCE	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
	solid amber	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
	flashing amber	One or more input or output addresses have been forced to an On or Off state, but the forces have not been enabled.
RS232	off	There is no activity.
	solid green	Data is being received or transmitted

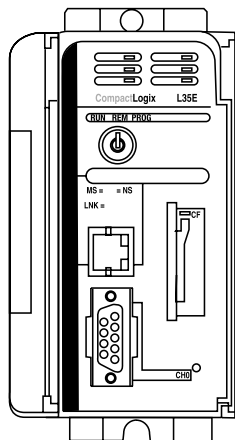
**Front Panel:**



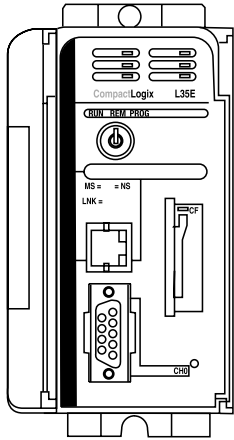
Indicator:	Color:	Description:
BAT	off	The battery supports memory.
	solid red	Either the battery is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• not installed.</li> <li>• 95% discharged and should be replaced.</li> </ul>
OK	off	No power is applied.
	flashing red	If the controller is: Then: a new controllerthe controller requires a firmware update not a new controllerA major fault occurred. To clear the fault, either: - Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG - Go online with RSLogix 5000 software
	solid red	The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Cycle power to the chassis.</li> <li>2. Download the project.</li> <li>3. Change to Run mode.</li> </ol> If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.
	solid green	The controller is OK.
	flashing green	The controller is storing or loading a project to or from nonvolatile memory.

## CompactLogix Controllers (1769-Lxx)



Front Panel:	Indicator:	Color:	Description:
	RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
		solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
	FORCE	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
		solid amber	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
		flashing amber	One or more input or output addresses have been forced to an On or Off state, but the forces have not been enabled.
	BAT	off	The battery supports memory.
		solid red	Either the battery is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>not installed.</li> <li>95% discharged and should be replaced.</li> </ul>
	I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are <i>no</i> devices in the I/O configuration of the controller.</li> <li>The controller does <i>not</i> contain a project (controller memory is empty).</li> </ul>
		solid green	The controller is communicating with all the devices in its I/O configuration.
		flashing green	One or more devices in the I/O configuration of the controller are <i>not</i> responding.
		flashing red	The controller is not communicating to any devices. The controller is faulted.

**Front Panel:**



**Indicator:**

**Color:**

**Description:**

OK	off	No power is applied.
	flashing red	If the controller is: Then: a new controllerthe controller requires a firmware update not a new controllerA major fault occurred. To clear the fault, either: - Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG - Go online with RSLogix 5000 software
	solid red	The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover: 1. Cycle power to the chassis. 2. Download the project. 3. Change to Run mode.  If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.
	solid green	The controller is OK.
	flashing green	The controller is storing or loading a project to or from nonvolatile memory.
DCH0 (RS-232)	off	User-configured communications are active.
	solid green	Default communications are active.
Channel 1 (RS-232) (1769-L31, -L30 only)	off	There is no activity.
	solid green	Data is being received or transmitted.

## CompactLogix Controllers (1769-L31, -L32E, -L35E, -L32C, -L35CR) - CompactFlash

Indicator:	Color:	Description:
CompactFlash CF	off	No activity.
	flashing green	The controller is reading from or writing to the CompactFlash card.
	flashing red	CompactFlash card does not have a valid file system.

## CompactLogix Controllers (1769-L32E, -L35E) - EtherNet/IP





Indicator:	Color:	Description:
EtherNet/IP MS	off	There is no activity.
	flashing green	The EtherNet/IP port does not have an IP address and is operating in BOOTP mode.
	solid green	EtherNet/IP communications are active.
	solid red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The controller is holding the EtherNet/IP port in reset or the controller is faulted.</li> <li>The EtherNet/IP port is performing it's power-up self-test.</li> <li>An unrecoverable fault has occurred. Cycle power to the controller.</li> </ul>
	flashing red	Firmware is being updated.



<b>Indicator:</b>	<b>Color:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
EtherNet/IP NS	off	There is no activity. The EtherNet/IP port does not have an IP address and is operating in BOOTP mode.
	flashing green	The EtherNet/IP port has an IP address but there are no CIP connections established.
	solid green	The EtherNet/IP port has an IP address and CIP connections are established.
	solid red	The assigned IP address is already in use.
	flashing red/green	The EtherNet/IP port is performing its power-up self-test.
EtherNet/IP LNK	off	The EtherNet/IP port is not properly connected to the EtherNet/IP network. Make sure that all Ethernet cables are connected and that the Ethernet switch has power.
	flashing green	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The EtherNet/IP port is performing its power-up self-test.</li><li>• The EtherNet/IP port is communicating on the network.</li></ul>
	solid green	The EtherNet/IP port is properly connected to the EtherNet/IP network.

## CompactLogix Controllers (1769-L32C, -L35CR) - ControlNet

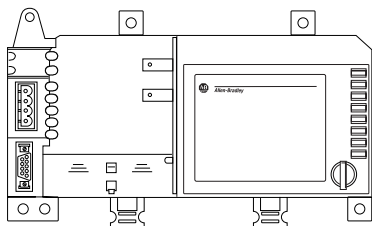
Indicator:	Color:	Description:
ControlNet MS	off	the controller has no power. the controller is faulted.
	steady red	a major fault has occurred on the controller.
	flashing red	a minor fault has occurred because a firmware update is in progress.
		a node address switch change occurred. The controller's node address switches may have been changed since power-up.
		the controller uses invalid firmware.
		the controller's node address duplicates that of another device.
	steady green	connections are established.
	flashing green	no connections are established.
	flashing red/green	the controller is performing self-diagnostics.

Indicator:	If both channel indicators are:	Description:
ControlNet  A  <sup>(1)</sup>	off	a channel is disabled.
	steady green	normal operation is occurring.
 B 	flashing green/off	temporary network errors have occurred. the node is not configured to go online.
	flashing red/off	media fault has occurred. no other nodes present on the network.
	flashing red/green	the network is configured incorrectly.
	<b>If either channel indicator is:</b>	
	off	you should check the MS indicators.
	steady red	the controller is faulted.
	alternating red/green	the controller is performing a self-test.
	alternating red/off	the node is configured incorrectly.

<sup>(1)</sup> Channel B is only labelled on the 1769-L35CR controller. The 1769-L32C controller only has channel A but uses the second indicator in some LED patterns as described in this table.

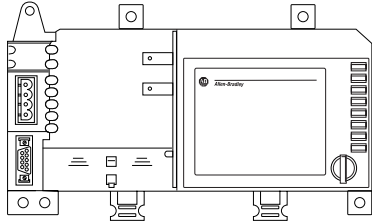
## FlexLogix Controllers (1794-L34)

### Front Panel:




Indicator:	Color:	Description:
RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
	solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
OK	off	No power is applied.
	flashing red	If the controller is: Then: a new controllerthe controller requires a firmware update not a new controllerA major fault occurred. To clear the fault, either: - Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG - Go online with RSLogix 5000 software
	solid red	The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover: 1. Cycle power to the chassis. 2. Download the project. 3. Change to Run mode.  If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.
	solid green	The controller is OK.
	flashing green	The controller is storing or loading a project to or from nonvolatile memory.
BATTERY	off	The battery supports memory.
	red	Either the battery is: • not installed. • 95% discharged and should be replaced.


## Front Panel:



Indicator:	Color:	Description:
I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The controller project is not downloaded (the condition after power up).</li> <li>• No I/O or communications are configured.</li> </ul>
	solid green	The controller is communicating to <b>all</b> devices.
LOCAL and LOCAL2	flashing green	One or more devices are not responding.
	off	The rail is inhibited.
	solid green	The controller is communicating to <b>all</b> devices on that rail.
	flashing green	One or more devices on that rail not responding.
RS232	flashing red	No modules exist on that rail.
	off	There is no activity.
	solid green	Data is being received or transmitted.
FORCE	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
	solid amber	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
	flashing amber	One or more input or output addresses have been forced to an On or Off state, but the forces have not been enabled.

## SoftLogix5800 Controllers (1789-L10, -L30, -L60)

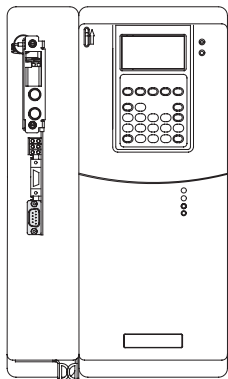
Front Panel:	Indicator:	Color:	Description:
 <p>The image shows the front panel of a SoftLogix5800 controller. At the top, the 'SoftLogix' logo is displayed. Below it are four status LEDs labeled RUN, FRC, BAT, and OK. Underneath these are three more LEDs labeled RUN, REM, and PR. A large rotary switch is located in the center of the panel.</p>	RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
		solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
	I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are <i>no</i> devices in the I/O configuration of the controller.</li> <li>The controller does <i>not</i> contain a project (controller memory is empty).</li> </ul>
		solid green	The controller is communicating with all the devices in its I/O configuration.
		flashing green	One or more devices in the I/O configuration of the controller are <i>not</i> responding.
		flashing red	A virtual chassis error was detected. Contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.
	FRC	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
		flashing green	At least one tag contains an I/O force value. I/O force values are inactive (disabled).
		solid green	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
	RS232 <sup>(1)</sup>	off	No COM port was selected.
		solid green	The selected COM port was successfully assigned to channel 0 of the controller.
		solid red	There is a COM port conflict or you selected an invalid COM port number.

Front Panel:	Indicator:	Color:	Description:
	BAT <sup>(1)</sup>	off	Normal operation.
		flashing amber	The controller is in power-up mode.
		solid red	Persistent storage for the controller has failed.
	OK	flashing red	If the controller is: Then: a new controllerthe controller requires a firmware update not a new controllerA major fault occurred. To clear the fault, either: - Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG - Go online with RSLogix 5000 software
		solid red	The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover: 1. Cycle power to the chassis. 2. Download the project. 3. Change to Run mode.  If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.
		solid green	The controller is OK.

<sup>(1)</sup> Note that these LEDs function slightly different than the same LEDs on a ControlLogix controller.

## PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5720

### Front Panel:



### Indicator:

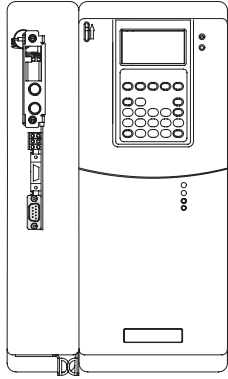
### Color:

### Description:

RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
	solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
FORCE	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
	flashing amber	At least one tag contains an I/O force value. I/O force values are inactive (disabled).
	solid amber	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
BAT	off	The battery supports memory.
	solid red	Either the battery is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• not installed.</li> <li>• 95% discharged and should be replaced.</li> </ul>
I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There are <i>no</i> devices in the I/O configuration of the controller.</li> <li>• The controller does <i>not</i> contain a project (controller memory is empty).</li> </ul>
	solid green	The controller is communicating with all the devices in its I/O configuration.
	flashing green	One or more devices in the I/O configuration of the controller are <i>not</i> responding.
	flashing red	No required I/O connections can be made, controller is in Run mode.



## Front Panel:



## Indicator:

## Color:

## Description:

RS232

off

No COM port was selected.

solid green

The selected COM port was successfully assigned to channel 0 of the controller.

solid red

There is a COM port conflict or you selected an invalid COM port number.

OK

flashing red

If the controller is:  
a new controller  
not a new controllerThen:  
the controller requires a firmware update  
A major fault occurred. To clear the fault, either:  
- Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG  
- Go online with RSLogix 5000 software

solid red

The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover:  
1. Cycle power to the chassis.  
2. Download the project.  
3. Change to Run mode.  
If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.

solid green

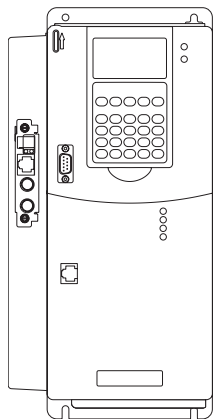
The controller is OK.

flashing green

The controller is storing or loading a project to or from nonvolatile memory.

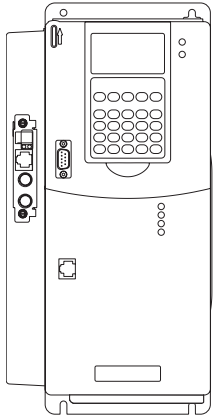
## PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5730

### Front Panel:



Indicator:	Color:	Description:
RUN	off	The controller is in Program or Test mode.
	solid green	The controller is in Run mode.
FORCE	off	No tags contain I/O force values. I/O forces are inactive (disabled).
	solid amber	I/O forces are active (enabled). I/O force values may or may not exist.
	flashing amber	One or more input or output addresses have been forced to an On or Off state, but the forces have not been enabled.
BAT	off	The battery supports memory.
	solid red	Either the battery is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>not installed.</li> <li>95% discharged and should be replaced.</li> </ul>
I/O	off	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are <i>no</i> devices in the I/O configuration of the controller.</li> <li>The controller does <i>not</i> contain a project (controller memory is empty).</li> </ul>
	solid green	The controller is communicating with all the devices in its I/O configuration.
	flashing green	One or more devices in the I/O configuration of the controller are <i>not</i> responding.
	flashing red	The controller is not communicating to any devices. The controller is faulted.

**Front Panel:**



Indicator:	Color:	Description:
COM	off	No RS-232 activity.
	flashing green	RS-232 activity.
OK	off	No power is applied.
	flashing red	<p>If the controller is:                      a new controller                      not a new controller</p> <p>Then:                      the controller requires a firmware update                      A major fault occurred.                      To clear the fault, either:                      - Turn the keyswitch from PROG to RUN to PROG                      - Go online with RSLogix 5000 software</p>
	solid red	<p>The controller detected a non-recoverable fault, so it cleared the project from memory. To recover:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Cycle power to the chassis.</li> <li>2. Download the project.</li> <li>3. Change to Run mode.</li> </ol> <p>If the OK LED remains solid red, contact your Rockwell Automation representative or local distributor.</p>
	solid green	Controller is OK.
flashing green		The controller is storing or loading a project to or from nonvolatile memory.

## Controller Comparison

Common Characteristics	1756 ControlLogix	1769 CompactLogix	1789 SoftLogix	1794 FlexLogix	PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix
controller tasks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• continuous</li> <li>• periodic</li> <li>• event</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 32 tasks (only 1 continuous)</li> <li>• event tasks: supports all event triggers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1769-L35E, -L35CR: 8 tasks</li> <li>• 1769-L32E, -L32C: 6 tasks</li> <li>• 1769-L31: 4 tasks</li> <li>• only 1 continuous</li> <li>• event tasks: supports consumed tag trigger and EVENT instruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 32 tasks (only 1 continuous)</li> <li>• event tasks: supports all event triggers, plus outbound and Windows events</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 tasks (only 1 continuous)</li> <li>• event tasks: supports consumed tag trigger and EVENT instruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 tasks (only 1 continuous)</li> <li>• event tasks: supports axis and motion event triggers</li> </ul>
user memory	1756-L55M12 750 Kbytes 1756-L55M13 1.5 Mbytes 1756-L55M14 3.5 Mbytes 1756-L55M16 7.5 Mbytes 1756-L55M22 750 Kbytes 1756-L55M23 1.5 Mbytes 1756-L55M24 3.5 Mbytes 1756-L61 2 Mbytes 1756-L62 4 Mbytes 1756-L63 8 Mbytes	1769-L31 512 Kbytes 1769-L32E, -L32C 750 Kbytes 1769-L35E, -L35CR 1.5 Mbytes	1789-L10 2 Mbytes 3 slots, no motion 1789-L30 64 Mbytes 5 slots 1789-L60 64 Mbytes 16 slots	1794-L34 512 Kbytes	5720 256 Kbytes 768 Kbytes with expansion memory 5730 1.5Mbytes
nonvolatile user memory	1756-L55M12 none 1756-L55M13 none 1756-L55M14 none 1756-L55M16 none 1756-L55M22 yes 1756-L55M23 yes 1756-L55M24 yes 1756-L6x CompactFlash	CompactFlash	none	yes	5720 yes (expansion memory) 5730 CompactFlash

Common Characteristics	1756 ControlLogix	1769 CompactLogix	1789 SoftLogix	1794 FlexLogix	PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix
built-in communication ports	1 port RS-232 serial (DF1 or ASCII)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1769-L31: 2 RS-232 serial ports (one DF1 only, other DF1 or ASCII)</li> <li>• 1769-L32C, -L35CR: 1 ControlNet port and 1 RS-232 serial port (DF1 or ASCII)</li> <li>• 1769-L32E, -L35E: 1 EtherNet/IP port and 1 RS-232 serial port (DF1 or ASCII)</li> </ul>	depends on personal computer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 RS-232 serial port (DF1 or ASCII)</li> <li>• 2 slots for 1788 communication cards</li> </ul>	5720 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 RS-232 serial port (DF1 or ASCII)</li> <li>• 1 slot for 1788 communication cards</li> </ul> 5730 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 RS-232 serial port (DF1 or ASCII)</li> <li>• 1 slot for 1788 (option)</li> <li>• 1 embedded ethernet (option)</li> </ul>
communication options (these options have specific products and profiles for their platform - other options are available via 3rd party products and generic profiles)	EtherNet/IP ControlNet DeviceNet Data Highway Plus Universal Remote I/O serial Modbus via ladder routine DH-485 SynchLink	EtherNet/IP ControlNet DeviceNet serial Modbus via ladder routine DH-485	EtherNet/IP ControlNet DeviceNet serial	EtherNet/IP ControlNet DeviceNet serial Modbus via ladder routine DH-485	EtherNet/IP ControlNet DeviceNet serial Modbus via ladder routine DH-485
connections	64 over ControlNet (48 recommended) 128 over EtherNet/IP	32 over ControlNet 32 over EtherNet/IP	64 over ControlNet (48 recommended) EtherNet/IP limited by type and number of cards	32 over ControlNet 32 over EtherNet/IP	32 over ControlNet 32 over EtherNet/IP
controller redundancy	full redundancy support	not applicable	not applicable	controller hot backup via DeviceNet	not applicable

Common Characteristics	1756 ControlLogix	1769 CompactLogix	1789 SoftLogix	1794 FlexLogix	PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix
native I/O	1756 ControlLogix I/O	1769 Compact I/O	supported via 3rd party PCI bus I/O cards	1794 FLEX I/O 1797 FLEX Ex I/O	5720 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1794 FLEX I/O</li> <li>1797 FLEX Ex I/O</li> </ul> 5730 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1769 Compact I/O</li> </ul>
simple motion	stepper servo via DeviceNet analog ac drive	stepper servo via DeviceNet analog ac drive	stepper servo via DeviceNet analog ac drive	stepper servo via DeviceNet analog ac drive	stepper servo via DeviceNet analog ac drive
integrated motion	SERCOS interface analog interface with options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>quadrature encoder input</li> <li>LDT input</li> <li>SSI input</li> </ul>	not applicable	SERCOS interface analog interface with options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>quadrature encoder input</li> <li>LDT input</li> <li>SSI input</li> </ul>	not applicable	1 full servo 1 feedback axis
mounting and/or installation options	1756 chassis	panel mount DIN rail	none	panel mount DIN rail	embedded
programming languages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relay ladder</li> <li>structured text</li> <li>function block</li> <li>sequential function chart</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relay ladder</li> <li>structured text</li> <li>function block</li> <li>sequential function chart</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relay ladder</li> <li>structured text</li> <li>function block</li> <li>sequential function chart</li> <li>external routines (Windows DLLs developed using C/C++)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relay ladder</li> <li>structured text</li> <li>function block</li> <li>sequential function chart</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relay ladder</li> <li>structured text</li> <li>function block</li> <li>sequential function chart</li> </ul>

## Select the Operating Mode of the Controller

Use this table to determine the operating mode of the controller:

If you want to:	Select one of these modes:				
	Run	Remote			Program
		Run	Test	Program	
turn outputs to the state commanded by the logic of the project	X	X			
turn outputs to their configured state for Program mode			X	X	X
execute (scan) tasks	X	X	X		
change the mode of the controller through software		X	X	X	
download a project		X	X	X	X
schedule a ControlNet network				X	X
while online, edit the project		X	X	X	X
send messages	X	X	X		
send and receive data in response to a message from another controller	X	X	X	X	X
produce and consume tags	X	X	X	X	X

Turn the key on the front panel of the controller to select the mode.

## Non-Volatile Memory

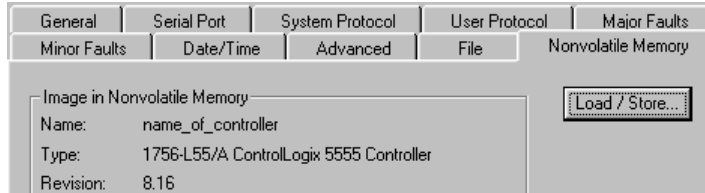
These controllers have nonvolatile memory for project storage.

Controller Type:	Catalog Number:	Firmware Revision:
CompactLogix5332E	1769-L32E <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
CompactLogix5335E	1769-L35E <sup>(1)</sup>	12.x or later
CompactLogix5331	1769-L31 <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
CompactLogix5332C	1769-L32C <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
CompactLogix5335CR	1769-L35CR <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
ControlLogix5555	1756-L55M22	10.x or later
	1756-L55M23	8.x or later
	1756-L55M24	8.x or later
ControlLogix5560M03SE	1756-L60M03SE <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
ControlLogix5561 and ControlLogix5562	1756-L61, -L62 <sup>(1)</sup>	12.x or later for series A 13.x or later for series B
ControlLogix5563	1756-L63 <sup>(1)</sup>	11.x or later for series A 13.x or later for series B
DriveLogix5720	various	10.x or later
DriveLogix5730	various <sup>(1)</sup>	13.x or later
FlexLogix5434 Series B	1794-L34/B	11.x or later

<sup>(1)</sup> Requires a 1784-CF64 Industrial CompactFlash memory card.

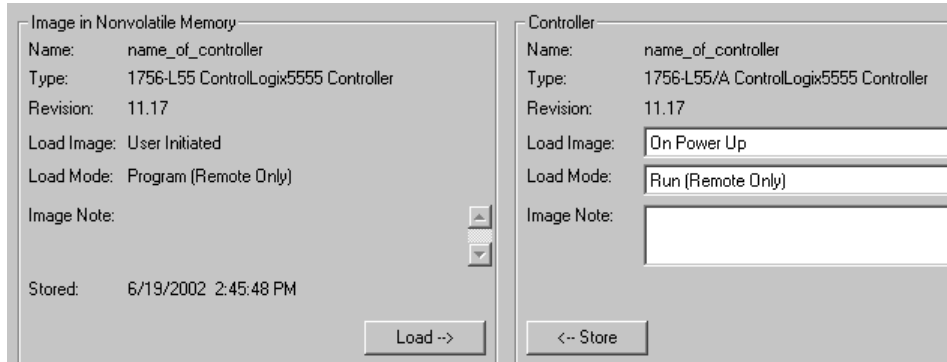


On the controller properties, you select to store/load a project to/from non-volatile memory:



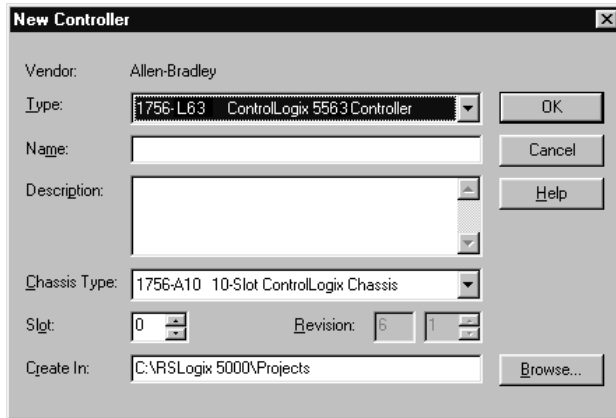
↓ Project that is currently in the nonvolatile memory of the controller  
(if any project is there).

↓ Project that is currently in the user memory (RAM) of the controller.



## Create a Project

From RSLogix 5000 software, select File →New.



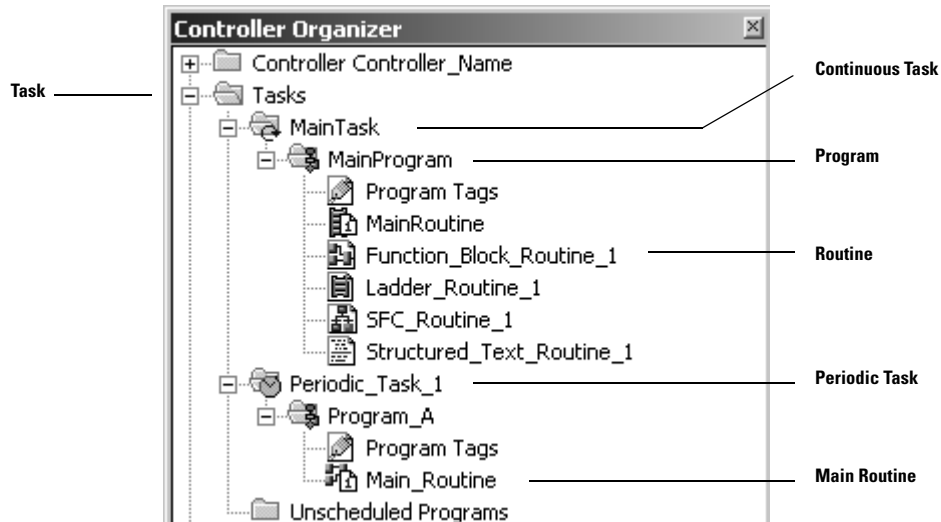
The screenshot shows the 'New Controller' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Vendor:** Allen-Bradley
- Type:** 1756-L63 ControlLogix 5563 Controller (dropdown menu)
- Name:** (empty text field)
- Description:** (empty text area)
- Chassis Type:** 1756-A10 10-Slot ControlLogix Chassis (dropdown menu)
- Slot:** 0 (spin box)
- Revision:** 6 (spin box)
- Create In:** C:\RSLogix 5000\Projects (text field)

Buttons on the right side of the dialog include OK, Cancel, Help, and Browse...

## Controller Organizer

The programming software uses the Controller Organizer to define a project.



## Controller Tasks

A task provides scheduling and priority information for a set of one or more programs that execute based on specific criteria. Once a task is triggered (activated), all the programs assigned (scheduled) to the task execute in the order in which they are displayed in the controller organizer.

Task:	Definition:
continuous task	<p>The continuous task runs in the background. Any CPU time not allocated to other operations (such as motion, communications, and periodic or event tasks) is used to execute the programs within the continuous task.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The continuous task runs all the time. When the continuous task completes a full scan, it restarts immediately.</li> <li>• A project does not require a continuous task. If used, there can be only one continuous task.</li> </ul>
periodic task	<p>A periodic task performs a function at a specific rate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whenever the time for the periodic task expires, the periodic task interrupts any lower priority tasks, executes one time, and then returns control to where the previous task left off.</li> <li>• You can configure the time period from 1 ms to 2000 s. The default is 10 ms. The performance of a periodic tasks depends on the type of Logix controller and the logic in the task.</li> </ul> <p>You assign a priority level (1 is the highest, 15 is the lowest) to each periodic task:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The highest priority task interrupts all lower priority tasks.</li> <li>• A higher priority task can interrupt a lower priority task multiple times.</li> <li>• Tasks at the same priority execute on a time-slice basis at 1 ms intervals.</li> </ul>
event task	<p>An event task performs a function only when a specific event (trigger) occurs. Whenever the trigger for the event task occurs, the event task interrupts any lower priority tasks, executes one time, and then returns control to where the previous task left off.</p> <p>Available triggers are Module Input Data State Change, Consumed Tag, Axis Registration 1 or 2, Axis Watch, Motion Group Execution, EVENT Instruction.</p>

The number of tasks supported depends on the controller:

<b>Controller:</b>	<b>Number of Tasks Supported:</b>
ControlLogix	32 tasks, one of which can be continuous There are 15 configurable priority levels for periodic tasks(1-15), with 1 being the highest priority and 15 being the lowest priority.
CompactLogix and PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5730	1769-L35E, -L35CR: 8 tasks, one of which can be continuous 1769-L32E, -L32C: 6 tasks, one of which can be continuous 1769-L31, -L30, -L20: 4 tasks, one of which can be continuous There are 15 configurable priority levels for periodic tasks(1-15), with 1 being the highest priority and 15 being the lowest priority. The CompactLogix controller uses a dedicated periodic task at priority 7 to process I/O data. This periodic task executes at the fastest RPI you have scheduled for the system. Its total execution time is as long as it takes to scan the configured I/O modules.
FlexLogix and PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5720	8 tasks, one of which can be continuous There are 15 configurable priority levels for periodic tasks(1-15), with 1 being the highest priority and 15 being the lowest priority. The controller uses a dedicated periodic task at priority 7 to process I/O data. This periodic task executes at the fastest RPI you have scheduled for the system. Its total execution time is as long as it takes to scan the configured I/O modules.
SoftLogix5800	32 tasks, one of which can be continuous There are 3 configurable priority levels for periodic tasks (1-3), with 1 being the highest priority and 3 being the lowest priority.

A task can have as many as 32 separate programs, each with its own executable routines and program-scoped tags. Once a task is triggered (activated), all the programs assigned to the task execute in the order in which they are grouped. Programs can only appear once in the Controller Organizer and cannot be shared by multiple tasks.

When a task is triggered, the scheduled programs within the task execute to completion from first to last. Each program contains program tags, a main routine, other routines, and an optional fault routine. When a program executes, its main routine executes first. Use the main routine to call (execute) other routines (subroutines). To call another routine within the program, use a Jump to Subroutine (JSR) instruction.

## Event task details

Not all Logix controllers support all event task triggers:

If you have this controller:	Then you can use these event task triggers:					
	Module Input Data State Change	Consumed Tag	Axis Registration 1 or 2	Axis Watch	Motion Group Execution	EVENT instruction
CompactLogix		X				X
FlexLogix		X				X
ControlLogix	X	X	X	X	X	X
DriveLogix5720			X	X	X	X
DriveLogix5730		X	X	X	X	X
SoftLogix5800	X <sup>(1)</sup>	X <sup>(2)</sup>	X	X	X	X

<sup>(1)</sup> Requires a 1756 I/O module or a virtual backplane.

<sup>(2)</sup> A SoftLogix5800 controller produces and consumes tags only over a ControlNet network.

To use an input module to trigger an event task, the module must support event task triggering. If the module is in a remote location, the associated communication modules must also support event triggering. These modules can trigger an event task.

Category	Module	Category	Module	Category	Module
1756 Discrete	1756-IA8D	1756 Analog	1756-IF16	1756 Communication	1756-CNB/A, -CNB/B, -CNB/D
	1756-IA16, -IA16I		1756-IF4FX0F2F/A		1756-CNBR/A, -CNBR/B, -CNBR/D
	1756-IA32		1756-IF6CIS		1756-DNB
	1756-IB16, -IB16D, -IB16I		1756-IF6I	1756-ENBT/A	
	1756-IB16ISOE		1756-IF8	1756-SYNCH/A	
	1756-IB32/A, -IB32/B		1756-IR6I	1756 Generic	1756-MODULE
	1756-IC16		1756-IT6I	SoftDNB	1784-PCIDS/A
	1756-IG16		1756-IT6I2	1789 Generic	1789-MODULE
	1756-IH16I, -IH16ISOE		1756 Specialty	1756-CFM/A	
	1756-IM16I			1756-HSC	
	1756-IN16			1756-PLS/B	
	1756-IV16/A				
	1756-IV32/A				

## Controller Tags

The most common data types are.

<b>For:</b>	<b>Select:</b>	<b>For:</b>	<b>Select:</b>
analog device in floating-point mode	REAL	digital I/O point	BOOL
analog device in integer mode (for very fast sample rates)	INT	floating-point number	REAL
ASCII characters	string	integer (whole number)	DINT
bit	BOOL	sequencer	CONTROL
counter	COUNTER	timer	TIMER

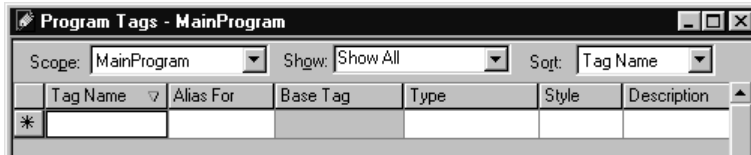
To organize your data:

<b>For a:</b>	<b>Use a:</b>
group of common attributes that are used by more than one machine	user-defined data type
group of data with the same data type	array
single value	tag of a single element
I/O device	



## Create a tag

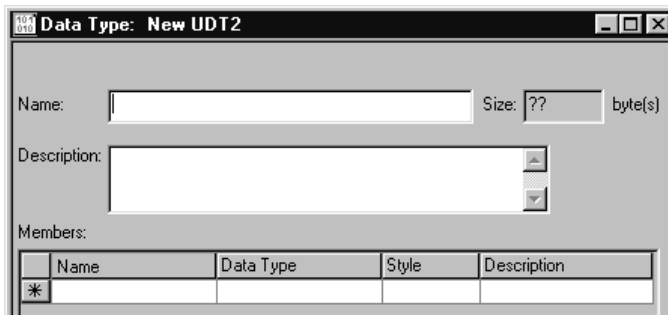
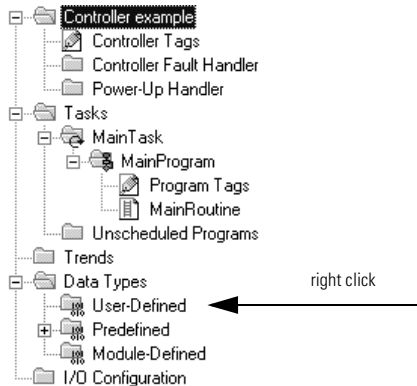
From the *Logic* menu, select *Edit Tags*.



You can configure tags to communicate directly with other controllers:

To:	Use a:
send data over the backplane and ControlNet network at a specified interval	produced tag
receive data from another controller over the backplane or ControlNet network at a specified interval	consumed tag

## Create a user-defined data type



## Aliases

An alias tag lets you create one tag that represents another tag.

- Both tags share the same value (s).
- When the value (s) of one of the tags changes, the other tag reflects the change as well.

*drill\_1\_depth\_limit* is an alias for *Local:2:1.Data.3* (a digital input point). When the input turns on, the alias tag also turns on.

*drill\_1\_on* is an alias for *Local:0:0.Data.2* (a digital output point). When the alias tag turns on, the output tag also turns on.

Tag Name	Alias For	Base Tag	Type	Style
drill_1			DRILL_STATION	
drill_1_depth_limit	Local:2:1.Data.3(C)	Local:2:1.Data.3(C)	BOOL	Decimal
drill_1_forward	Local:0:0.Data.3(C)	Local:0:0.Data.3(C)	BOOL	Decimal
drill_1_home_limit	Local:2:1.Data.2(C)	Local:2:1.Data.2(C)	BOOL	Decimal
drill_1_on	Local:0:0.Data.2(C)	Local:0:0.Data.2(C)	BOOL	Decimal
drill_1_retract	Local:0:0.Data.4(C)	Local:0:0.Data.4(C)	BOOL	Decimal
hole_position			REAL[6,6]	Float
machine_on			BOOL	Decimal
north_tank	tanks[0,1]	tanks[0,1]	TANK	
north_tank_drain			BOOL	Decimal

The (C) indicates that the tag is at the controller scope.

## Choose a Programming Language

In general, if the function or group of functions represent:	Then use this language:
continuous or parallel execution of multiple operations (not sequenced)	ladder logic
boolean or bit-based operations	
complex logical operations	
message and communication processing	
machine interlocking	
operations that service or maintenance personnel may have to interpret in order to troubleshoot the machine or process	function block diagram
continuous process and drive control	
loop control	
calculations in circuit flow	sequential function chart (SFC)
high-level management of multiple operations	
repetitive sequences of operations	
batch process	
motion control using structured text	
state machine operations	
continued	

---

**In general, if the function or group of functions represent:****Then use this language:**

---

complex mathematical operations

structured text

---

specialized array or table loop processing

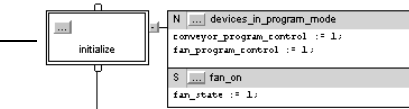
---

ASCII string handling or protocol processing

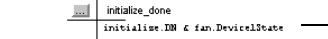
**Notes:**

A **sequential function chart** (SFC) is similar to a flowchart. It uses steps and transitions to perform specific operations or actions.

A step represents a major function of your process. It contains the actions that occur at a particular time, phase, or station.



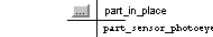
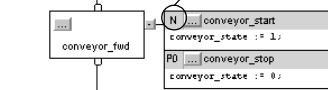
An action is one of the functions that a step performs.



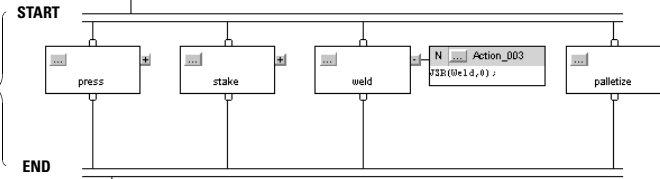
A transition is the true or false condition that tells the SFC when to go to the next step.



A qualifier determines when an action starts and stops.



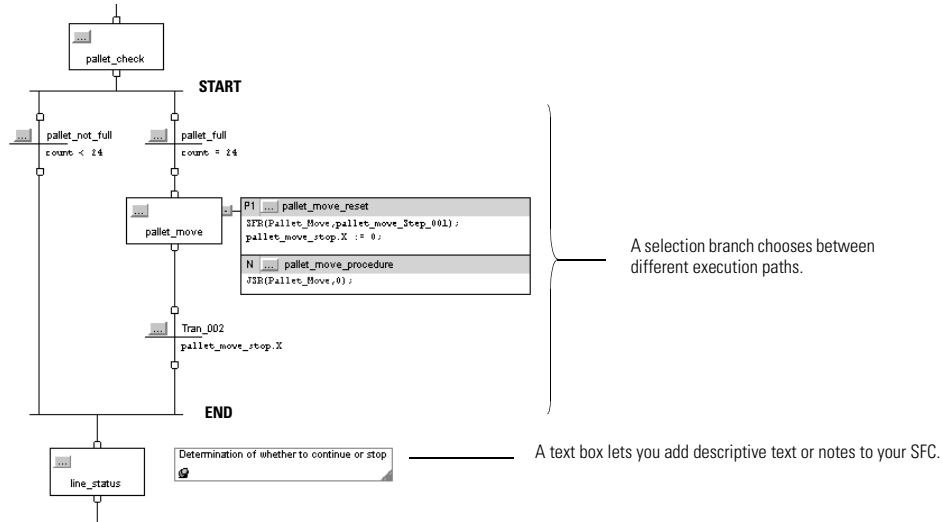
A simultaneous branch executes more than 1 step at the same time.



*continued*

## 2 - 2 Sequential Function Charts

### Example SFC continued

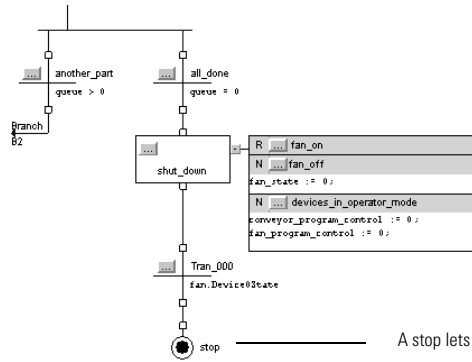


*continued*



*Example SFC continued*







A wire connects one element to another element anywhere on the chart.









A stop lets you stop and wait for a command to restart.

## Editing an SFC



Button	SFC Element Created	Description
	step and transition pair	Add a step and transition pair. See the descriptions for step and transition below.
	step	Add a step. A step represents a major function of a process. It contains the events that occur at a particular time, phase, or station.
	transition	Add a transition. A transition is the true or false condition or conditions that determine when to go to the next step.
	action	Add an action or a boolean action to the selected step. Click the step and then press this button. An action represents a functional division of a step. Several actions make up a step. Each action performs a specific function, such as controlling a motor, opening a valve, or placing a group of devices in a specific mode.
	boolean action	Each action includes a qualifier. When a step is active (executing) the qualifier determines when the action starts and stops.
	selection branch diverge	Starts a selection branch. Use the new path button to add paths to the branch structure.

Button	SFC Element Created	Description
	simultaneous branch diverge	Starts a simultaneous branch. Use the new path button to add paths to the branch structure.
	converge SFC elements	Ends the current branch. Select the last step of each path in the branch and then press this button. A simultaneous branch ends with a double horizontal line and no transition. A selection branch ends with a transition for each path and a single horizontal line.
	extend branch	Add a path to a branch. Click the first step of the path that is to the left of where you want to add the new path and then press the button.
	stop	End a path in a branch without connecting to other SFC elements.
	subroutine/return	Add a subroutine call.
	text box	Create a text box. Once the text box appears, you can click and drag the text box to the location you want. Double-click the text box to add text.

## SFC\_STEP Structure

Member	Data type	Details
T	DINT	When a step becomes active, the Timer (T) value resets and then starts to count up in milliseconds. The timer continues to count up until the step goes inactive, regardless of the Preset (PRE) value.
PRE	DINT	Enter the time in the Preset (PRE) member. When the Timer (T) reaches the Preset value, the Done (DN) bit turns on and stays on until the step becomes active again.  As an option, enter a numeric expression that calculates the time at runtime.
DN	BOOL	When the Timer (T) reaches the Preset (PRE) value, the Done (DN) bit turns on and stays on until the step becomes active again.
LimitLow	DINT	Enter the time in the LimitLow member (milliseconds). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the step goes inactive before the Timer (T) reaches the LimitLow value, the AlarmLow bit turns on.</li> <li>• The AlarmLow bit stays on until you reset it.</li> <li>• To use this alarm function, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.</li> </ul>
AlarmEn	BOOL	To use the alarm bits, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.
AlarmLow	BOOL	If the step goes inactive before the Timer (T) reaches the LimitLow value, the AlarmLow bit turns on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bit stays on until you reset it.</li> <li>• To use this alarm function, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.</li> </ul>
LimitHigh	DINT	Enter the time in the LimitHigh member (milliseconds). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Timer (T) reaches the LimitHigh value, the AlarmHigh bit turns on.</li> <li>• The AlarmHigh bit stays on until you reset it.</li> <li>• To use this alarm function, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.</li> </ul>
AlarmEn	BOOL	To use the alarm bits, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.

Member	Data type	Details
AlarmHigh	BOOL	If the Timer (T) reaches the LimitHigh value, the AlarmHigh bit turns on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The bit stays on until you reset it.</li> <li>To use this alarm function, turn on (check) the AlarmEnable (AlarmEn) bit.</li> </ul>
X	BOOL	The X bit is on the entire time the step is active (executing).
FS	BOOL	The FS bit is on during the first scan of the step.
SA	BOOL	The SA bit is on when the step is active except during the first and last scan of the step.
LS	BOOL	The LS bit is on during the last scan of the step. Use this bit only if you do the following: On the <i>Controller Properties</i> dialog box, <i>SFC Execution</i> tab, set the <i>Last Scan of Active Step</i> to <i>Don't Scan</i> or <i>Programmatic reset</i> .
Reset	BOOL	An SFC Reset (SFR) instruction resets the SFC to a step or stop that the instruction specifies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Reset bit indicates to which step or stop the SFC will go to begin executing again.</li> <li>Once the SFC executes, the Reset bit clears.</li> </ul>
TMax	DINT	Use this for diagnostic purposes. The controller clears this value only when you choose the <i>Restart Position</i> of <i>Restart at initial step</i> and the controller changes modes or experiences a power cycle.
OV	BOOL	Use this for diagnostic purposes.
Count	DINT	This is <i>not</i> a count of scans of the step. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The count increments each time the step becomes active.</li> <li>It increments again only after the step goes inactive and then active again.</li> <li>The count resets only if you configure the SFC to restart at the initial step. With that configuration, it resets when the controller changes from program mode to run mode.</li> </ul>

## 2 - 8 Sequential Function Charts

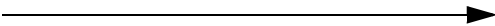
---

<b>Member</b>	<b>Data type</b>	<b>Details</b>	
Status	DINT	<b>For this member:</b>	<b>Use this bit:</b>
		Reset	22
		AlarmHigh	23
		AlarmLow	24
		AlarmEn	25
		OV	26
		DN	27
		LS	28
		SA	29
		FS	30
X	31		

## SFC\_ACTION Structure

Member	Data type	Details	
Q	BOOL	The status of the Q bit depends on whether the action is a boolean action or non-boolean action:	
		<b>If the action is:</b>	<b>Then the Q bit is:</b>
		boolean	on (1) the entire time the action is active, including the last scan of the action
		non-boolean	on (1) while the action is active but off (0) at the last scan of the action
To use a bit to determine when an action is active, use the Q bit.			
A	BOOL	The A bit is on the entire time the action is active.	
T	DINT	When an action becomes active, the Timer (T) value resets and then starts to count up in milliseconds. The timer continues to count up until the action goes inactive, regardless of the Preset (PRE) value.	
PRE	DINT	Enter the time limit or delay in the Preset (PRE) member. The action starts or stops when the Timer (T) reaches the Preset value.	
Count	DINT	<p>This is <i>not</i> a count of scans of the action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The count increments each time the action becomes active.</li> <li>• It increments again only after the action goes inactive and then active again.</li> <li>• The count resets only if you configure the SFC to restart at the initial step. With that configuration, it resets when the controller changes from program mode to run mode.</li> </ul>	
Status	DINT	<b>For this member:</b>	<b>Use this bit:</b>
		Q	30
		A	31

## Action Qualifiers

If you want the action to:	And:	Assign this qualifier:	Which means:
start when the step is activated	stop when the step is deactivated	N	Non-Stored (default)
	execute only once	P1	Pulse (Rising Edge)
	stop before the step is deactivated or when the step is deactivated	L	Time Limited
	stay active until a <i>Reset</i> action turns off this action	S	Stored
	stay active until a <i>Reset</i> action turns off this action or a specific time expires, even if the step is deactivated	SL	Stored and Time Limited
start a specific time after the step is activated <i>and</i> the step is still active	stop when the step is deactivated	D	Time Delayed
	stay active until a <i>Reset</i> action turns off this action	DS	Delayed and Stored
start a specific time after the step is activated, even if the step is deactivated before this time	stay active until a <i>Reset</i> action turns off this action	SD	Stored and Time Delayed
execute once when the step is activated	execute once when the step is deactivated	P	Pulse
start when the step is deactivated	execute only once	P0	Pulse (Falling Edge)
turn off (reset) a stored action:		R	Reset
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• S Stored</li> <li>• SL Stored and Time Limited</li> <li>• DS Delayed and Stored</li> <li>• SD Stored and Time Delayed</li> </ul>			



## SFC\_STOP Structure

Member:	Data type:	Details:		
X	BOOL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the SFC reaches the stop, the X bit turns on.</li> <li>The X bit clears if you configure the SFCs to restart at the initial step and the controller changes from program to run mode.</li> <li>In a nested SFC, the X bit also clears if you configure the SFCs for automatic reset and the SFC leaves the step that calls the nested SFC.</li> </ul>		
Reset	BOOL	<p>An SFC Reset (SFR) instruction resets the SFC to a step or stop that the instruction specifies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Reset bit indicates to which step or stop the SFC will go to begin executing again.</li> <li>Once the SFC executes, the Reset bit clears.</li> </ul>		
Count	DINT	<p>This is <i>not</i> a count of scans of the stop.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The count increments each time the stop becomes active.</li> <li>It increments again only after the stop goes inactive and then active again.</li> <li>The count resets only if you configure the SFC to restart at the initial step. With that configuration, it resets when the controller changes from program mode to run mode.</li> </ul>		
Status	DINT	<p><b>For this member:</b></p>		
		<p><b>Use this bit:</b></p>		
		<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Reset</td> <td>22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X</td> <td>31</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Reset	22
Reset	22			
X	31			

## How Do You Want to Use the Action?

There are two types of actions:

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>Then use a:</b>
execute structured text directly in the SFC	non-boolean action
call a subroutine	
use the automatic reset option to reset data upon leaving a step	
only set a bit and program other logic to monitor the bit to determine when to execute.	boolean action

### Use a non-boolean action

A non-boolean action contains the logic for the action. It uses structured text to execute assignments and instructions or call a subroutine. With non-boolean actions, you also have the option to postscan (automatically reset) the assignments and instructions before leaving a step:

- During postscan the controller executes the assignments and instructions as if all conditions are false.
- The controller postscans both embedded structured text and any subroutine that the action calls.

### Use a boolean action

A boolean action contains no logic for the action. It simply sets a bit in its tag (SFC\_ACTION structure). To do the action, other logic must monitor the bit and execute when the bit is on. With boolean actions, you have to manually reset the assignments and instructions that are associated with the action. Since there is no link between the action and the logic that performs the action, the automatic reset option does not effect boolean actions. You can reuse a boolean action multiple times within the same SFC.

## Configure the Execution of an SFC

From Controller Properties:

General	Serial Port	System Protocol	User Protocol	Major Faults
Minor Faults	Date/Time	Advanced	SFC Execution	File

Execution Control:

- Execute current active steps only
- Execute until FALSE transition

Restart Position:

- Restart at most recently executed step
- Restart at initial step

Last Scan of Active Steps:

- Automatic reset
- Programmatic reset
- Don't scan



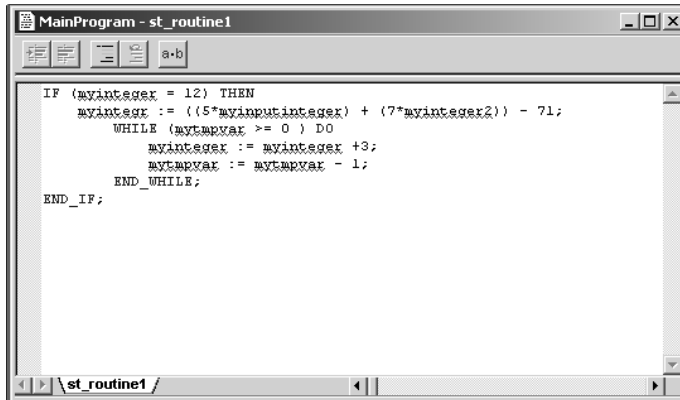
**Notes:**

## Structured Text Syntax

Structured text is a textual programming language that uses statements to define what to execute.

- Structured text is not case sensitive.
- Use tabs and carriage returns (separate lines) to make your structured text easier to read. They have no effect on the execution of the structured text.

This is an example of a structured text routine.



```
IF (myinteger = 12) THEN
  myinteger := ((5*myinputinteger) + (7*myinteger2)) - 71;
  WHILE (mytmpvar >= 0) DO
    myinteger := myinteger +3;
    mytmpvar := mytmpvar - 1;
  END_WHILE;
END_IF;
```

### 3 - 2 Structured Text

---

Structured text can contain these components:

<b>Term:</b>	<b>Definition:</b>	<b>Examples:</b>
assignment (see page 3-4)	Use an assignment statement to assign values to tags. The := operator is the assignment operator. Terminate the assignment with a semi colon “;”.	<i>tag := expression;</i>
expression (see page 3-6)	An expression is part of a complete assignment or construct statement. An expression evaluates to a number (numerical expression) or to a true or false state (BOOL expression). An expression contains:  tags                    A named area of the memory where data is stored (BOOL, SINT,INT,DINT, REAL, string).  immediates            A constant value.  operators              A symbol or mnemonic that specifies an operation within an expression.  functions              When executed, a function yields one value. Use parentheses to contain the operand of a function.  Even though their syntax is similar, functions differ from instructions in that functions can only be used in expressions. Instructions cannot be used in expressions.	<i>value1</i>  <i>4</i>  <i>tag1 + tag2</i> <i>tag1 &gt;= value1</i>  <i>function(tag1)</i>
instruction (see page 3-13)	An instruction is a standalone statement. An instruction uses parenthesis to contain its operands. Depending on the instruction, there can be zero, one, or multiple operands. When executed, an instruction yields one or more values that are part of a data structure. Terminate the instruction with a semi colon “;”.  Instructions cannot be used in expressions. Functions can only be used in expressions.	<i>instruction();</i>  <i>instruction(operand);</i>  <i>instruction(operand1, operand2,operand3);</i>

<b>Term:</b>	<b>Definition:</b>	<b>Examples:</b>
construct (see page 3-15)	A conditional statement used to trigger structured text code (i.e, other statements). Terminate the construct with a semi colon ";".	IF...THEN CASE FOR...DO WHILE...DO REPEAT...UNTIL EXIT
comment (see page 3-25)	Text that explains or clarifies what a section of structured text does. Use comments to make it easier to interpret the structured text. Comments do not affect the execution of the structured text. Comments can appear anywhere in structured text.	//comment  (*start of comment . . . end of comment*)  /*start of comment . . . end of comment*/

Entering spaces in structured text syntax is optional. Spaces have no effect on the execution of the structured text. For example, both of these statements execute the same:

Tag\_B:=Tag\_A

Tag\_B := Tag\_A

## Assignments

Use an assignment to change the value stored within a tag. An assignment has this syntax:

```
tag := expression ;
```

where:

<b>Component:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
<i>tag</i>	represents the tag that is getting the new value the tag must be a BOOL, SINT, INT, DINT, or REAL								
:=	is the assignment symbol								
<i>expression</i>	represents the new value to assign to the tag								
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><b>If <i>tag</i> is this data type:</b></th> <th><b>Use this type of expression:</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BOOL</td> <td>BOOL expression</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SINT INT</td> <td>DINT REAL</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>numeric expression</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>If <i>tag</i> is this data type:</b>	<b>Use this type of expression:</b>	BOOL	BOOL expression	SINT INT	DINT REAL		numeric expression
<b>If <i>tag</i> is this data type:</b>	<b>Use this type of expression:</b>								
BOOL	BOOL expression								
SINT INT	DINT REAL								
	numeric expression								
;	ends the assignment								

The *tag* retains the assigned value until another assignment changes the value.



## Specify a non-retentive assignment

A non-retentive assignment is reset to zero each time the controller:

- enters the RUN mode
- leaves the step of an SFC if you configure the SFC for *Automatic reset*.

A non-retentive assignment has this syntax:

```
tag [:=] expression ;
```

where:

Component:	Description:								
<i>tag</i>	represents the tag that is getting the new value the tag must be a BOOL, SINT, INT, DINT, or REAL								
[:=]	is the non-retentive assignment symbol								
<i>expression</i>	represents the new value to assign to the tag								
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>If <i>tag</i> is this data type:</th> <th>Use this type of expression:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BOOL</td> <td>BOOL expression</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SINT INT</td> <td>DINT REAL</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>numeric expression</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	If <i>tag</i> is this data type:	Use this type of expression:	BOOL	BOOL expression	SINT INT	DINT REAL		numeric expression
If <i>tag</i> is this data type:	Use this type of expression:								
BOOL	BOOL expression								
SINT INT	DINT REAL								
	numeric expression								
;	ends the assignment								

## Expressions

An expression is a tag name, equation, or comparison. To write an expression, use any of the following:

- tag name that stores the value (variable)
- number that you enter directly into the expression (immediate value)
- functions, such as: ABS, TRUNC
- operators, such as: +, -, <, >, And, Or

**BOOL expression:** An expression that produces either the BOOL value of 1 (true) or 0 (false).

- A bool expression uses bool tags, relational operators, and logical operators to compare values or check if conditions are true or false. For example, `tag1>65`.
- A simple bool expression can be a single BOOL tag.
- Typically, you use bool expressions to condition the execution of other logic.

**Numeric expression:** An expression that calculates an integer or floating-point value.

- A numeric expression uses arithmetic operators, arithmetic functions, and bitwise operators. For example, `tag1+5`.
- Often, you nest a numeric expression within a bool expression. For example, `(tag1+5)>65`.

## Arithmetic operators

Arithmetic operators calculate new values.

<b>To:</b>	<b>Use this operator:</b>	<b>Optimal data type:</b>
add	+	DINT, REAL
subtract/negate	-	DINT, REAL
multiply	*	DINT, REAL
exponent (x to the power of y)	**	DINT, REAL
divide	/	DINT, REAL
modulo-divide	MOD	DINT, REAL

## Arithmetic functions

Arithmetic functions perform math operations. Specify a constant, a non-boolean tag, or an expression for the function.

<b>For:</b>	<b>Use this function:</b>	<b>Optimal data type:</b>
absolute value	ABS ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	DINT, REAL
arc cosine	ACOS ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
arc sine	ASIN ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
arc tangent	ATAN ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
cosine	COS ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
radians to degrees	DEG ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	DINT, REAL
natural log	LN ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
log base 10	LOG ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
degrees to radians	RAD ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	DINT, REAL
sine	SIN ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
square root	SQRT ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	DINT, REAL
tangent	TAN ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	REAL
truncate	TRUNC ( <i>numeric_expression</i> )	DINT, REAL

## Relational operators

Relational operators compare two values or strings to provide a true or false result. The result of a relational operation is a BOOL value:

<b>If the comparison is:</b>	<b>The result is:</b>
true	1
false	0

<b>For this comparison:</b>	<b>Use this operator:</b>	<b>Optimal Data Type:</b>
equal	=	DINT, REAL, string
less than	<	DINT, REAL, string
less than or equal	<=	DINT, REAL, string
greater than	>	DINT, REAL, string
greater than or equal	>=	DINT, REAL, string
not equal	<>	DINT, REAL, string

## Logical operators

Logical operators let you check if multiple conditions are true or false. The result of a logical operation is a BOOL value:

<b>If the comparison is:</b>	<b>The result is:</b>
true	1
false	0

<b>For:</b>	<b>Use this operator:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>
logical AND	&, AND	BOOL
logical OR	OR	BOOL
logical exclusive OR	XOR	BOOL
logical complement	NOT	BOOL

## Bitwise operators

Bitwise operators manipulate the bits within a value based on two values.

<b>For:</b>	<b>Use this operator:</b>	<b>Optimal Data Type:</b>
bitwise AND	&, AND	DINT
bitwise OR	OR	DINT
bitwise exclusive OR	XOR	DINT
bitwise complement	NOT	DINT

## Determine the order of execution

The operations you write into an expression are performed in a prescribed order, not necessarily from left to right.

- Operations of equal order are performed from left to right.
- If an expression contains multiple operators or functions, group the conditions in parenthesis “( )” to ensure the correct order.

<b>Order:</b>	<b>Operation:</b>
1.	()
2.	function (...)
3.	**
4.	-(negate)
5.	NOT
6.	*, /, MOD
7.	+, - (subtract)
8.	<, <=, >, >=
9.	=, <>
10.	&, AND
11.	XOR
12.	OR



## Instructions

Structured text statements can also be instructions. See the Locator Table at the beginning of this manual for a list of the instructions available in structured text. A structured text instruction executes each time it is scanned. A structured text instruction within a construct executes every time the conditions of the construct are true. If the conditions of the construct are false, the statements within the construct are not scanned. There is no rung-condition or state transition that triggers execution.

This differs from function block instructions that use EnableIn to trigger execution. Structured text instructions execute as if EnableIn is always set.

This also differs from relay ladder instructions that use rung-condition-in to trigger execution. Some relay ladder instructions only execute when rung-condition-in toggles from false to true. These are transitional relay ladder instructions. In structured text, instructions will execute each time they are scanned unless you pre-condition the execution of the structured text instruction.

For example, the ABL instruction is a transitional instruction in relay ladder. In this example, the ABL instruction only executes on a scan when *tag\_xic* transitions from cleared to set. The ABL instruction does not execute when *tag\_xic* stays set or when *tag\_xic* is cleared.



In structured text, if you write this example as:

```
IF tag_xic THEN ABL(0,serial_control);  
  
END_IF;
```

the ABL instruction will execute every scan that *tag\_xic* is set, not just when *tag\_xic* transitions from cleared to set.

If you want the ABL instruction to execute only when *tag\_xic* transitions from cleared to set, you have to condition the structured text instruction. Use a one shot to trigger execution.

```
osri_1.InputBit := tag_xic;  
OSRI(osri_1);  
  
IF (osri_1.OutputBit) THEN  
    ABL(0,serial_control);  
END_IF;
```

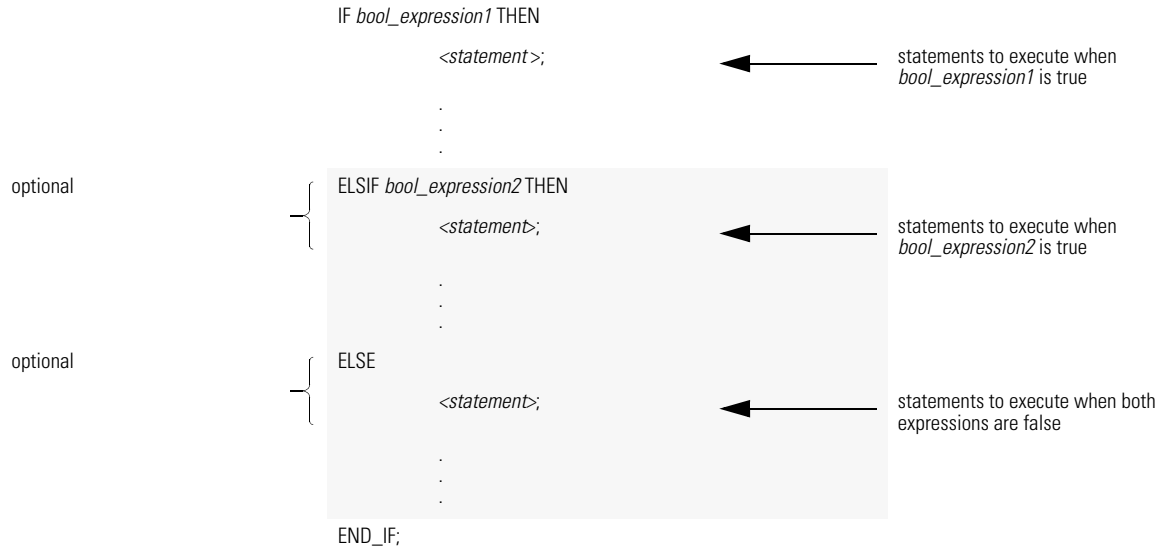
## Constructs

Constructs can be programmed singly or nested within other constructs.

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>Use this construct:</b>	<b>See page:</b>
do something if or when specific conditions occur	IF...THEN	3-16
select what to do based on a numerical value	CASE...OF	3-17
do something a specific number of times before doing anything else	FOR...DO	3-19
keep doing something as long as certain conditions are true	WHILE...DO	3-21
keep doing something until a condition is true	REPEAT...UNTIL	3-23

## IF..THEN

Use IF...THEN to do something if or when specific conditions occur. The syntax is:



## CASE...OF

Use CASE to select what to do based on a numerical value. The syntax is:

```

CASE numeric_expression OF
    selector1:    <statement>;
                  .
                  .
    selector2:    <statement>;
                  .
                  .
    selector3:    <statement>;
                  .
                  .
    ELSE
    <statement>;
    .
    .
END_CASE;

```

specify as many alternative selector values (paths) as you need

statements to execute when *numeric\_expression* = *selector1*

statements to execute when *numeric\_expression* = *selector2*

statements to execute when *numeric\_expression* = *selector3*

optional

statements to execute when *numeric\_expression* ≠ any selector

The syntax for entering the selector values is:

<b>When selector is:</b>	<b>Enter:</b>
one value	<i>value</i> : <i>statement</i>
multiple, distinct values	<i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> , <i>valueN</i> : < <i>statement</i> > Use a comma (,) to separate each value.
a range of values	<i>value1</i> .. <i>valueN</i> : < <i>statement</i> > Use two periods (..) to identify the range.
distinct values plus a range of values	<i>valuea</i> , <i>valueb</i> , <i>value1</i> .. <i>valueN</i> : < <i>statement</i> >

## FOR...DO

Use the FOR...DO loop to do something a specific number of times before doing anything else. The syntax is:

```

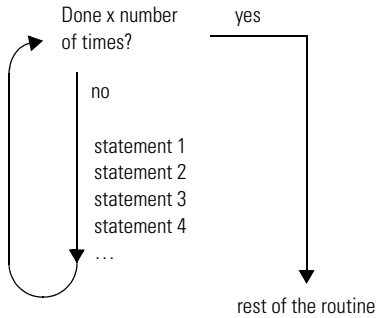
FOR count:= initial_value
    TO final_value
optional { BY increment
DO
    <statement>;
optional { IF bool_expression THEN
    EXIT;
    END_IF;
END_FOR;
    
```

If you don't specify an increment, the loop increments by 1.

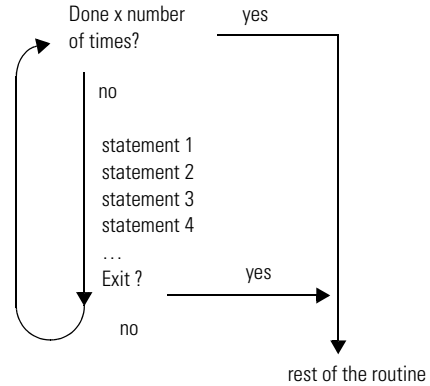
If there are conditions when you want to exit the loop early, use other statements, such as an IF...THEN construct, to condition an EXIT statement.

A major fault will occur if:	Fault type:	Fault code:
the construct loops too long	6	1

The following diagrams show how a FOR...DO loop executes and how an EXIT statement leaves the loop early.



**The FOR...DO loop executes a specific number of times.**



**To stop the loop before the count reaches the last value, use an EXIT statement.**



## WHILE...DO

Use the WHILE...DO loop to keep doing something as long as certain conditions are true. The syntax is:

```

WHILE bool_expression1 DO
    <statement>;
optional {
    IF bool_expression2 THEN
        EXIT;
    END_IF;
}
END_WHILE;

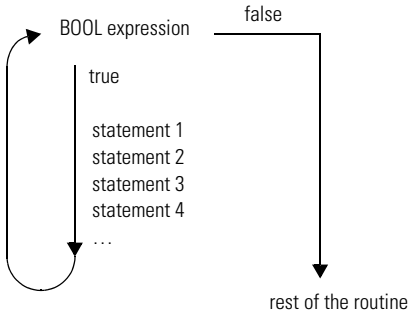
```

← statements to execute while *bool\_expression1* is true

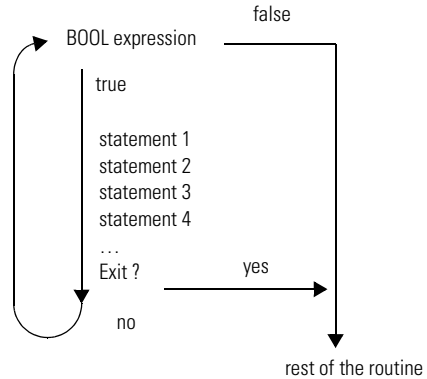
← If there are conditions when you want to exit the loop early, use other statements, such as an IF...THEN construct, to condition an EXIT statement.

A major fault will occur if:	Fault type:	Fault code:
the construct loops too long	6	1

The following diagrams show how a WHILE...DO loop executes and how an EXIT statement leaves the loop early.



**While the *bool expression* is true, the controller executes only the statements within the WHILE...DO loop.**



**To stop the loop before the conditions are true, use an EXIT statement.**

## REPEAT...UNTIL

Use the REPEAT...UNTIL loop to keep doing something until conditions are true. The syntax is:

```

REPEAT
    <statement>;
    optional {
        IF bool_expression2 THEN
            EXIT;
        END_IF;
    }
UNTIL bool_expression1
END_REPEAT;

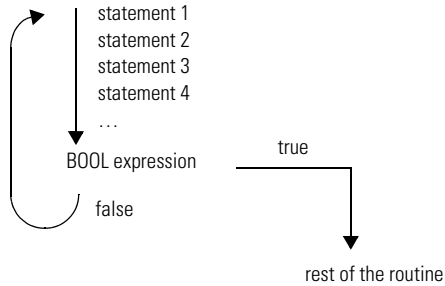
```

← statements to execute while *bool\_expression1* is false

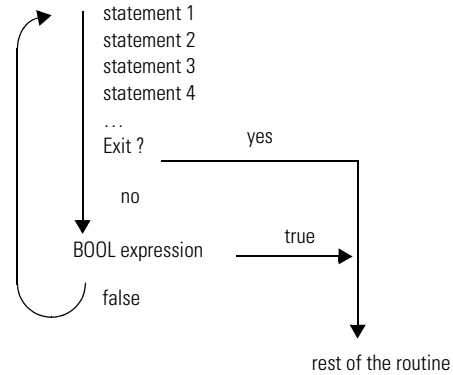
← If there are conditions when you want to exit the loop early, use other statements, such as an IF...THEN construct, to condition an EXIT statement.

A major fault will occur if:	Fault type:	Fault code:
the construct loops too long	6	1

The following diagrams show how a REPEAT...UNTIL loop executes and how an EXIT statement leaves the loop early.



**While the *bool\_expression* is false, the controller executes only the statements within the REPEAT...UNTIL loop.**



**To stop the loop before the conditions are false, use an EXIT statement.**

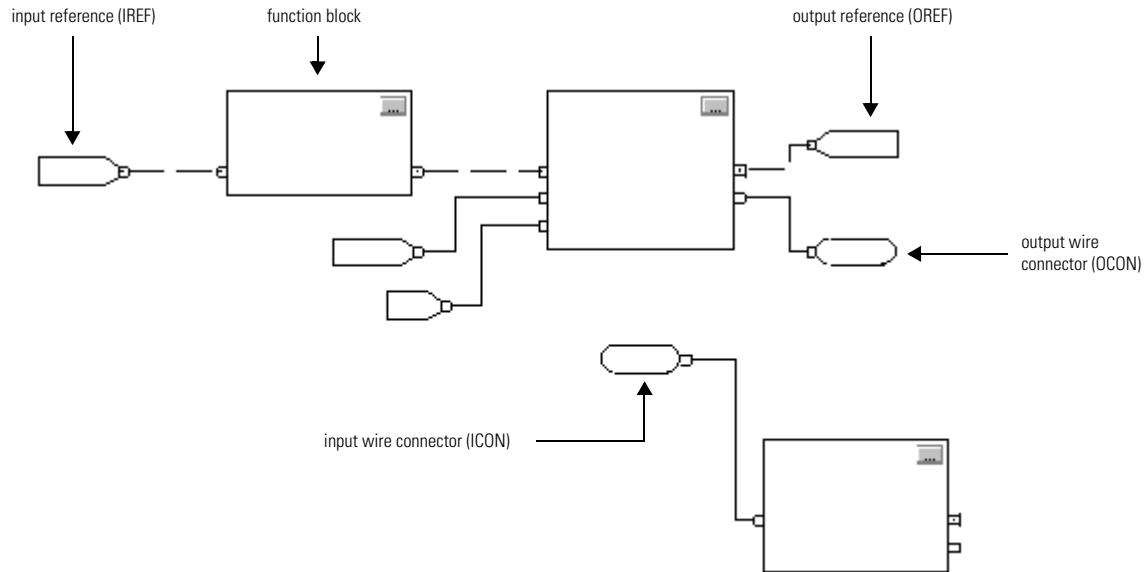
## Comments

To add comments to your structured text:

<b>To add a comment:</b>	<b>Use one of these formats:</b>
on a single line	<i>//comment</i>
at the end of a line of structured text	<i>(* comment*)</i> <i>/* comment*/</i>
within a line of structured text	<i>(* comment*)</i> <i>/* comment*/</i>
that spans more than one line	<i>(* start of comment . . . end of comment*)</i> <i>/* start of comment . . . end of comment*/</i>






**Notes:**

Function block diagrams are visual programs that can contain the following elements. Each function block is an instruction that defines a control action.:



## Editing a Function Block Diagram.



This toolbar button:	Creates this ladder element:	Description:
	IREF	Add an input reference to supply a value from an input device or tag.
	OREF	Add an output reference to send a value to an output device or tag.
	ICON	Add input and output wire connectors. Use wire connectors to transfer data between function blocks when they are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• far apart on the same sheet</li> <li>• on different sheets within the same routine</li> </ul>
	OCON	Use wire connectors to disperse data to several points in the routine by assigning one OCON to multiple ICONs.
	instruction	Select a specific function block to perform an operation on an input value or values and produce an output value or values  Use the tabs on the bottom of the toolbar to display other available function blocks.

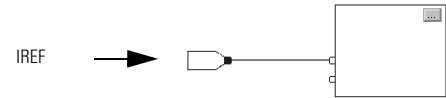


## Data Latching

---

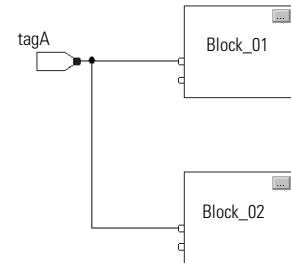
**Condition:**

If you use an IREF to specify input data for a function block instruction, the data in that IREF is latched for the scan of the function block routine. The IREF latches data from program-scoped and controller-scoped tags. The controller updates all IREF data at the beginning of each scan.

**Example:**

---

In this example, the value of tagA is stored at the beginning of the routine's execution. The stored value is used when Block\_01 executes. The same stored value is also used when Block\_02 executes. If the value of tagA changes during execution of the routine, the stored value of tagA in the IREF does not change until the next execution of the routine.



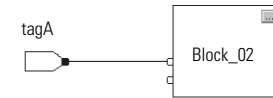
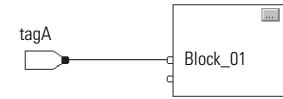
## 4 - 4 Function Block Diagram

---

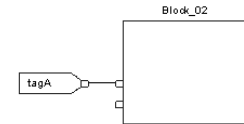
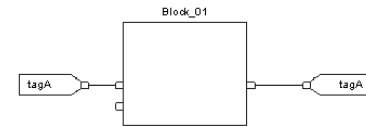
### Condition:

This example is the same as the one above. The value of tagA is stored only once at the beginning of the routine's execution. The routine uses this stored value throughout the routine.

### Example:



You can use the same tag in multiple IREFs and an OREF in the same routine. Because the values of tags in IREFs are latched every scan through the routine, all IREFs will use the same value, even if an OREF obtains a different tag value during execution of the routine. In this example, if tagA has a value of 25.4 when the routine starts executing this scan, and Block\_01 changes the value of tagA to 50.9, the second IREF wired into Block\_02 will still use a value of 25.4 when Block\_02 executes this scan. The new tagA value of 50.9 will not be used by any IREFs in this routine until the start of the next scan.



## Order of Execution

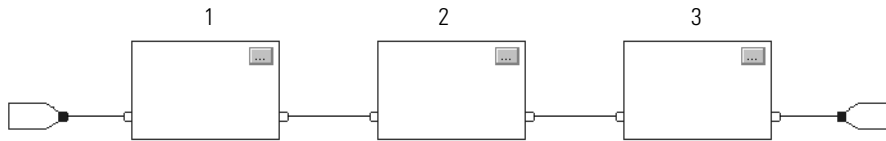
The RSLogix 5000 programming software automatically determines the order of execution for the function blocks in a routine when you:

- verify a function block routine
- verify a project that contains a function block routine
- download a project that contains a function block routine

You define execution order by wiring function blocks together and indicating the data flow of any feedback wires, if necessary.

If function blocks are not wired together, it does not matter which block executes first. There is no data flow between the blocks.

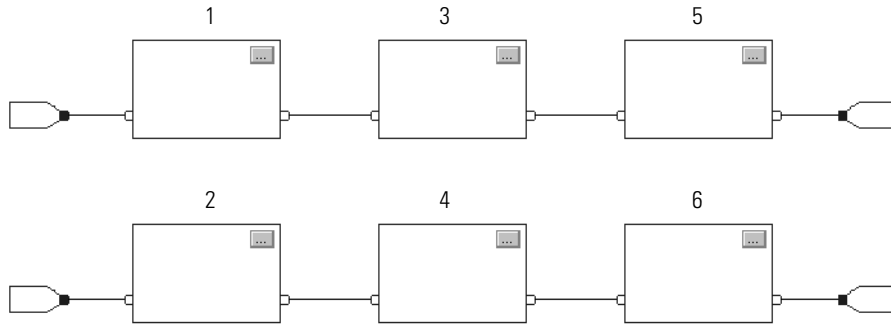
If you wire the blocks sequentially, the execution order moves from input to output. The inputs of a block require data to be available before the controller can execute that block. For example, block 2 has to execute before block 3 because the outputs of block 2 feed the inputs of block 3.



## 4 - 6 Function Block Diagram

---

Execution order is only relative to the blocks that are wired together. The following example is fine because the two groups of blocks are not wired together. The blocks within a specific group execute in the appropriate order in relation to the blocks in that group.

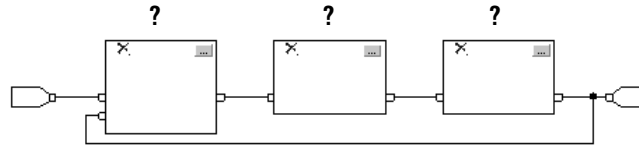


## Resolve a Loop

To create a feedback loop around a block, wire an output pin of the block to an input pin of the same block. The following example is OK. The loop contains only a single block, so execution order does not matter.

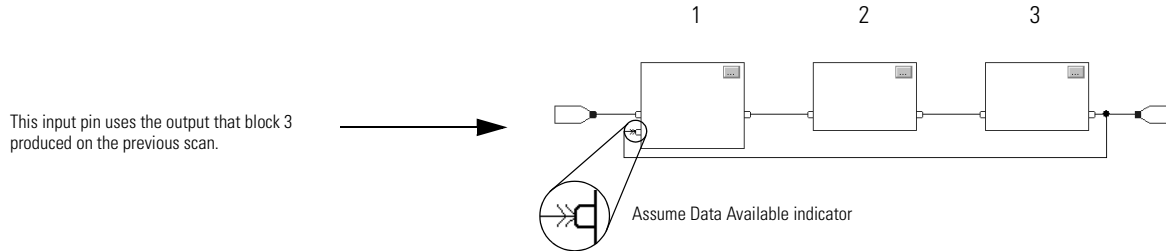


If a group of blocks are in a loop, the controller cannot determine which block to execute first. In other words, it cannot resolve the loop.



## 4 - 8 Function Block Diagram

To identify which block to execute first, mark the input wire that creates the loop (the feedback wire) with the *Assume Data Available* indicator. In the following example, block 1 uses the output from block 3 that was produced in the previous execution of the routine.



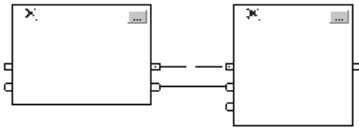
The *Assume Data Available* indicator defines the data flow within the loop. The arrow indicates that the data serves as input to the first block in the loop. *Do not* mark all the wires of a loop with the *Assume Data Available* indicator.

<b>This is OK</b>	<b>This is NOT OK</b>
<p>The diagram shows two function blocks labeled 1 and 2 connected in a loop. Block 1 is on the left and block 2 is on the right. The output of block 2 is connected back to the input of block 1. A callout box points to the input pin of block 1, showing a square symbol with a diagonal line and an arrow, labeled "Assume Data Available indicator".</p>	<p>The controller cannot resolve the loop because all the wires use the <i>Assume Data Available</i> indicator.</p> <p>The diagram shows two function blocks connected in a loop. Both blocks have a question mark above them. The input pin of the first block has an "Assume Data Available" indicator. The output wire of the second block also has an "Assume Data Available" indicator. The feedback wire from the second block back to the first block also has an "Assume Data Available" indicator.</p>

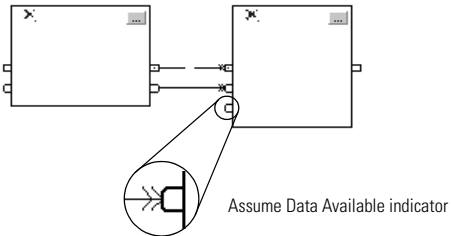
## Resolve Data Flow Between Two Blocks

If you use two or more wires to connect two blocks, use the same data flow indicators for all of the wires between the two blocks.

### This is OK



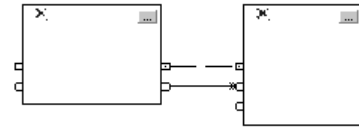
Neither wire uses the *Assume Data Available* indicator.



Both wires use the *Assume Data Available* indicator.

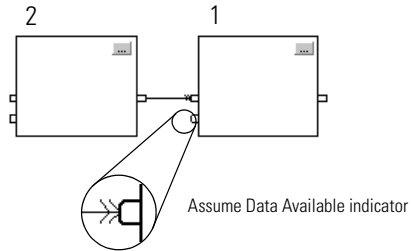
### This is NOT OK

One wire uses the *Assume Data Available* indicator while the other wire does not.



## Create a One Scan Delay

To produce a one scan delay between blocks, use the *Assume Data Available* indicator. In the following example, block 1 executes first. It uses the output from block 2 that was produced in the previous scan of the routine.



## Summary

In summary, a function block routine executes in this order:

1. The controller latches all data values in IREFs.
2. The controller executes the other function blocks in the order determined by how they are wired.
3. The controller writes outputs in OREFs.



## Define Program/Operator Control

Several instructions support the concept of Program/Operator control. These instructions include:

- Enhanced Select (ESEL)
- Totalizer (TOT)
- Enhanced PID (PIDE)
- Ramp/Soak (RMPS)
- Discrete 2-State Device (D2SD)
- Discrete 3-State Device (D3SD)

Program/Operator control lets you control these instructions simultaneously from both your user program and from an operator interface device. When in Program control, the instruction is controlled by the Program inputs to the instruction; when in Operator control, the instruction is controlled by the Operator inputs to the instruction.

Program or Operator control is determined by using these inputs:

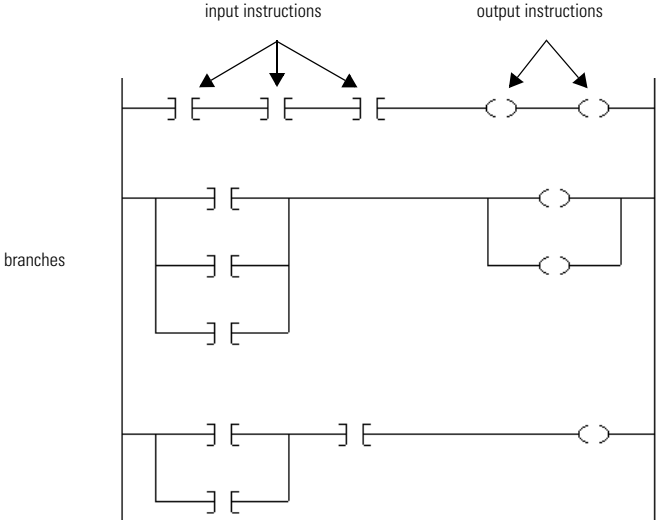
<b>Input:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.ProgProgReq	A program request to go to Program control.
.ProgOperReq	A program request to go to Operator control.
.OperProgReq	An operator request to go to Program control.
.OperOperReq	An operator request to go to Operator control.

To determine whether an instruction is in Program or Control control, examine the ProgOper output. If ProgOper is set, the instruction is in Program control; if ProgOper is cleared, the instruction is in Operator control.

<b>Control:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
program	<p>The Program request inputs take precedence over the Operator request inputs. This provides the capability to use the ProgProgReq and ProgOperReq inputs to “lock” an instruction in a desired control.</p> <p>Constantly setting the ProgProgReq can “lock” the instruction into Program control. This is useful for automatic startup sequences when you want the program to control the action of the instruction without worrying about an operator inadvertently taking control of the instruction. In this example, you have the program set the ProgProgReq input during the startup, and then clear the ProgProgReq input once the startup was complete. Once the ProgProgReq input is cleared, the instruction remains in Program control until it receives a request to change. For example, the operator could set the OperOperReq input from a faceplate to take over control of that instruction.</p> <p>Program request inputs are not normally cleared by the instruction because these are normally wired as inputs into the instruction. If the instruction clears these inputs, the input would just get set again by the wired input. There might be situations where you want to use other logic to set the Program requests in such a manner that you want the Program requests to be cleared by the instruction. In this case, you can set the ProgValueReset input and the instruction will always clear the Program mode request inputs when it executes.</p>
operator	<p>Operator request inputs to an instruction are always cleared by the instruction when it executes. This allows operator interfaces to work with these instructions by merely setting the desired mode request bit. You don't have to program the operator interface to reset the request bits.</p> <p>Operator control takes precedence over Program control if both input request bits are set. For example, if ProgProgReq and ProgOperReq are both set, the instruction goes to Operator control.</p>

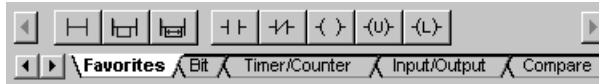
## Relay Ladder Logic





Relay ladder logic places input and output instructions on rungs.





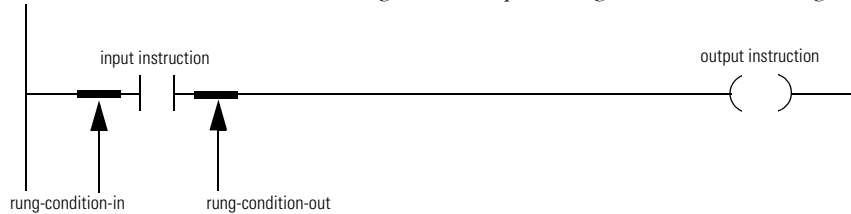
## Editing Relay Ladder



This toolbar button:	Creates this ladder element:	Description:
	ladder rung	A rung determines the execution order of input and output instructions.
	branch	A branch is two or more instructions in parallel.
	a branch level	There is no limit to the number of parallel branch levels that you can enter. You can nest branches to as many as 6 levels.
	instruction	<p><b>Input instruction:</b> An instruction that checks, compares, or examines specific conditions in your machine or process.</p> <p><b>Output instruction:</b> An instruction that takes some action, such as turn on a device, turn off a device, copy data, or calculate a value.</p> <p>Use the tabs on the bottom of the toolbar to display other available instructions.</p>

## Rung Condition

The controller evaluates ladder instructions based on the rung condition preceding the instruction (rung-condition-in).



Only input instructions affect the rung-condition-in of subsequent instructions on the rung:

- If the rung-condition-in to an input instruction is true, the controller evaluates the instruction and sets the rung-condition-out to match the results of the evaluation.
  - If the instruction evaluates to true, the rung-condition-out is true.
  - If the instruction evaluates to false, the rung-condition-out is false.
- An output instruction does not change the rung-condition-out.
  - If the rung-condition-in to an output instruction is true, the rung-condition-out is set to true.
  - If the rung-condition-in to an output instruction is false, the rung-condition-out is set to false.

## System Values Stored by the Controller

The controller automatically stored different status information:

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>See page:</b>
use specific key words in logic to monitor specific status conditions	6-2
get or set system data (status information)	6-3
available status information - GSV/SSV objects	6-5
get information about controller memory	6-26

## Monitor Status Flags

The controller supports status keywords you can use in your logic to monitor specific events:

To determine if:	Use:
the value you are storing cannot fit into the destination because it is either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>greater than the maximum value for the destination</li> <li>less than the minimum value for the destination</li> </ul>	S:V
<b>Important:</b> Each time S:V goes from cleared to set, it generates a minor fault (type 4, code 4)	
the instruction's destination value is 0	S:Z
the instruction's destination value is negative	S:N
an arithmetic operation causes a carry or borrow that tries to use bits that are outside of the data type	S:C
this is the first, normal scan of the routines in the current program	S:FS
at least one minor fault has been generated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The controller sets this bit when a minor fault occurs due to program execution.</li> <li>The controller does not set this bit for minor faults that are not related to program execution, such as battery low.</li> </ul>	S:MINOR

The status keywords are not case sensitive. Because the status flags can change so quickly, RSLogix 5000 software does *not* display the status of the flags. You *cannot* define a tag alias to a keyword.



## Get and Set System Data (Status Information)

The controller stores system data in objects. There is no status file, as in the PLC-5 controller. Use the GSV/SSV instructions get and set controller system data that is stored in objects. To get or set a system value:

1. Select the system object you want.

To get or set:	Select:	To get or set:	Select:
axis of a servo module	AXIS	status, faults, and mode of a module	MODULE
system overhead timeslice	CONTROLLER	group of axes	MOTIONGROUP
physical hardware of a controller	CONTROLLERDEVICE	fault information or scan time for a program	PROGRAM
coordinated system time for the devices in one chassis	CST	instance number of a routine	ROUTINE
DF1 communication driver for the serial port	DF1	configuration of the serial port	SERIALPORT
fault history for a controller	FAULTLOG	properties or elapsed time of a task	TASK
attributes of a message instruction	MESSAGE	wall clock time of a controller	WALLCLOCKTIME

2. In the list of attributes for the object, identify the attribute that you want to access.

## 6 - 4 Accessing System Values

---

3. Create a tag for the value of the attribute:

<b>If the data type of the attribute is:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
one element (e.g., DINT)	Create a tag for the attribute.
more than one element (e.g., DINT[7])	A. Create a user-defined data type that matches the organization of data for the attribute. B. Create a tag for the attribute.

4. In your logic, use a GSV instruction to get the value of an attribute or an SSV instruction to set the value of an attribute.
5. Assign the required operands to the instruction:

<b>For this operand:</b>	<b>Select:</b>
Class name	name of the object
Instance name	name of the specific object (e.g., name of the required I/O module, task, message) Not all objects require this entry. To specify the current task, program, or routine, select <i>THIS</i> .
Attribute Name	name of the attribute
Dest (GSV)	tag that will store the retrieved value If the tag is a user-defined data type or an array, select the first member or element.
Source (SSV)	tag that stores the value to be set If the tag is a user-defined data type or an array, select the first member or element.

## Available Status Information - GSV/SSV Objects

### CONTROLLER attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
TimeSlice	INT	GSV SSV	Percentage of available CPU that is assigned to communications. Valid values are 10-90. This value cannot be changed when the keyswitch is in the run position.

### CONTROLLERDEVICE attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
DeviceName	SINT[33]	GSV	ASCII string that identifies the catalog number of the controller and memory board. The first byte contains a count of the number of ASCII characters returned in the array string.
ProductCode	INT	GSV	Identifies the type of controller: <b>Value:</b> <b>Meaning:</b> 3            ControlLogix5550 15          SoftLogix5860 41          FlexLogix5433 43          FlexLogix5434 48          PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5720 50          CompactLogix5320 51          ControlLogix5555 52          PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix5730

## 6 - 6 Accessing System Values

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>																																		
ProductRev	INT	GSV	Identifies the current product revision. Display should be hexadecimal. The low byte contains the major revision; the high byte contains the minor revision.																																		
SerialNumber	DINT	GSV	Serial number of the device. The serial number is assigned when the device is built.																																		
Status	INT	GSV	<p><b>Device Status Bits</b></p> <p><b>Bits 7-4: Meaning:</b></p> <table> <tr><td>0000</td><td>reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>0001</td><td>flash update in progress</td></tr> <tr><td>0010</td><td>reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>0011</td><td>reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>0100</td><td>flash is bad</td></tr> <tr><td>0101</td><td>faulted</td></tr> <tr><td>0110</td><td>run</td></tr> <tr><td>0111</td><td>program</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Fault Status Bits</b></p> <p><b>Bits 11-8: Meaning:</b></p> <table> <tr><td>0001</td><td>recoverable minor fault</td></tr> <tr><td>0010</td><td>unrecoverable minor fault</td></tr> <tr><td>0100</td><td>recoverable major fault</td></tr> <tr><td>1000</td><td>unrecoverable major fault</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Controller Status Bits</b></p> <p><b>Bits 13-12: Meaning:</b></p> <table> <tr><td>01</td><td>keyswitch in run</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>keyswitch in program</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>keyswitch in remote</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Bits 15-14 Meaning</b></p> <table> <tr><td>01</td><td>controller is changing modes</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>debug mode if controller is in run mode</td></tr> </table>	0000	reserved	0001	flash update in progress	0010	reserved	0011	reserved	0100	flash is bad	0101	faulted	0110	run	0111	program	0001	recoverable minor fault	0010	unrecoverable minor fault	0100	recoverable major fault	1000	unrecoverable major fault	01	keyswitch in run	10	keyswitch in program	11	keyswitch in remote	01	controller is changing modes	10	debug mode if controller is in run mode
0000	reserved																																				
0001	flash update in progress																																				
0010	reserved																																				
0011	reserved																																				
0100	flash is bad																																				
0101	faulted																																				
0110	run																																				
0111	program																																				
0001	recoverable minor fault																																				
0010	unrecoverable minor fault																																				
0100	recoverable major fault																																				
1000	unrecoverable major fault																																				
01	keyswitch in run																																				
10	keyswitch in program																																				
11	keyswitch in remote																																				
01	controller is changing modes																																				
10	debug mode if controller is in run mode																																				
Type	INT	GSV	Identifies the device as a controller. Controller = 14																																		
Vendor	INT	GSV	Identifies the vendor of the device. Allen-Bradley = 0001																																		

## CST attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
CurrentStatus	INT	GSV	<p>Current status of the coordinated system time.</p> <p><b>Bit:</b></p> <p>0 timer hardware faulted: the device's internal timer hardware is in a faulted state</p> <p>1 ramping enabled: the current value of the timer's lower 16+ bits ramp up to the requested value, rather than snap to the lower value.</p> <p>2 system time master: the CST object is a master time source in the ControlLogix system</p> <p>3 synchronized: the CST object's 64-bit CurrentValue is synchronized by a master CST object via a system time update</p> <p>4 local network master: the CST object is the local network master time source</p> <p>5 in relay mode: the CST object is acting in a time relay mode</p> <p>6 duplicate master detected: a duplicate local network time master has been detected. This bit is always 0 for time-dependent nodes.</p> <p>7 unused</p> <p>8-9 00 = time dependent node 01 = time master node 10 = time relay node 11 = unused</p> <p>10-15 unused</p>
CurrentValue	DINT[2]	GSV	<p>Current value of the timer. DINT[0] contains the lower 32; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits. The timer source is adjusted to match the value supplied in update services and from local communication network synchronization. The adjustment is either a ramping to the requested value or an immediate setting to the request value, as reported in the CurrentStatus attribute.</p>

## DF1 attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
ACKTimeout	DINT	GSV	The amount of time to wait for an acknowledgment to a message transmission (point-to-point and master only). Valid value 0-32,767. Delay in counts of 20 msec periods. Default is 50 (1 second).
DiagnosticCounters	INT[19]	GSV	Array of diagnostic counters for the DF1 communication driver.
<b>word offset</b>	<b>DF1 point-to-point</b>	<b>DF1 slave</b>	<b>master</b>
0	signature (0x0043)	signature (0x0042)	signature (0x0044)
1	modem bits	modem bits	modem bits
2	packets sent	packets sent	packets sent
3	packets received	packets received	packets received
4	undelivered packets	undelivered packets	undelivered packets
5	unused	messages retried	messages retried
6	NAKs received	NAKs received	unused
7	ENQs received	poll packets received	unused
8	bad packets NAKed	bad packets not ACKed	bad packets not ACKed
9	no memory sent NAK	no memory not ACKed	unused
10	duplicate packets received	duplicate packets received	duplicate packets received
11	bad characters received	unused	unused
12	DCD recoveries count	DCD recoveries count	DCD recoveries count
13	lost modem count	lost modem count	lost modem count
14	unused	unused	priority scan time maximum
15	unused	unused	priority scan time last
16	unused	unused	normal scan time maximum
17	unused	unused	normal scan time last
18	ENQs sent	unused	unused

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
DuplicateDetection	SINT	GSV	Enables duplicate message detection. <b>Value:</b> 0 non zero <b>Meaning:</b> duplicate message detection disabled duplicate message detection enabled
EmbeddedResponseEnable	SINT	GSV	Enables embedded response functionality (point-to-point only). <b>Value:</b> 0 1 <b>Meaning:</b> initiated only after one is received (default) enabled unconditionally
ENQTransmitLimit	SINT	GSV	The number of inquiries (ENQs) to send after an ACK timeout (point-to-point only). Valid value 0-127. Default setting is 3.
EOTSuppression	SINT	GSV	Enable suppressing EOT transmissions in response to poll packets (slave only). <b>Value:</b> 0 non zero <b>Meaning:</b> EOT suppression disabled (disabled) EOT suppression enabled
ErrorDetection	SINT	GSV	Specifies the error-detection scheme. <b>Value:</b> 0 1 <b>Meaning:</b> BCC (default) CRC
MasterMessageTransmit	SINT	GSV	Current value of the master message transmission (master only). <b>Value:</b> 0 1 <b>Meaning:</b> between station polls (default) in poll sequence (in place of master's station number)
NAKReceiveLimit	SINT	GSV	The number of NAKs received in response to a message before stopping transmission (point-to-point communication only). Valid value 0-127. Default is 3.

## 6 - 10 Accessing System Values

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
NormalPollGroupSize	INT	GSV	Number of stations to poll in the normal poll node array after polling all the stations in the priority poll node array (master only). Valid value 0-255. Default is 0.
PollingMode	SINT	GSV	Current polling mode (master only). Default setting is 1. <b>Value:    Meaning:</b> 0           message-based, but don't allow slaves to initiate messages 1           message-based, but allow slaves to initiate messages (default) 2           standard, single-message transfer per node scan 3           standard, multiple-message transfer per node scan
ReplyMessageWait	DINT	GSV	The time (acting as a master) to wait after receiving an ACK before polling the slave for a response (master only). Valid value 0-65,535. Delay in counts of 20 msec periods. The default is 5 periods (100 msec).
StationAddress	INT	GSV	Current station address of the serial port. Valid value 0-254. Default is 0.
SlavePollTimeout	DINT	GSV	The amount of time in msec that the slave waits for the master to poll before the slave declares that it is unable to transmit because the master is inactive (slave only). Valid value 0-32,767. Delay in counts of 20 msec periods. The default is 3000 periods (1 minute).
TransmitRetries	SINT	GSV	Number of times to resend a message without getting an acknowledgment (master and slave only). Valid value 0-127. Default is 3.
PendingACKTimeout	DINT	SSV	Pending value for the ACKTimeout attribute.
PendingDuplicateDetection	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the DuplicateDetection attribute.
PendingEmbeddedResponseEnable	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the EmbeddedResponse attribute.
PendingENQTransmitLimit	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the ENQTransmitLimit attribute.
PendingEOTSuppression	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the EOTSuppression attribute.



<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
PendingErrorDetection	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the ErrorDetection attribute.
PendingNormalPollGroupSize	INT	SSV	Pending value for the NormalPollGroupSize attribute.
PendingMasterMessageTransmit	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the MasterMessageTransmit attribute.
PendingNAKReceiveLimit	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the NAKReceiveLimit attribute.
PendingPollingMode	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the PollingMode attribute.
PendingReplyMessageWait	DINT	SSV	Pending value for the ReplyMessageWait attribute.
PendingStationAddress	INT	SSV	Pending value for the StationAddress attribute.
PendingSlavePollTimeout	DINT	SSV	Pending value for the SlavePollTimeout attribute.
PendingTransmitRetries	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the TransmitRetries attribute.

## **FAULTLOG attributes**

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
MajorEvents	INT	GSV SSV	How many major faults have occurred since the last time this counter was reset.
MinorEvents	INT	GSV SSV	How many minor faults have occurred since the last time this counter was reset.

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
MajorFaultBits	DINT	GSV SSV	Individual bits indicate the reason for the current major fault. <b>Bit:</b> 1 power loss 3 I/O 4 instruction execution (program) 5 fault handler 6 watchdog 7 stack 8 mode change 11 motion
MinorFaultBits	DINT	GSV SSV	Individual bits indicate the reason for the current minor fault. <b>Bit:</b> 4 instruction execution (program) 6 watchdog 9 serial port 10 battery

## MESSAGE attributes

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
ConnectionPath	SINT[130]	GSV SSV	Data to setup the connection path. The first two bytes (low byte and high byte) are the length in bytes of the connection path.
ConnectionRate	DINT	GSV SSV	Requested packet rate of the connection.

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
MessageType	SINT	GSV SSV	Specifies the type of message. <b>Value:</b> 0 <b>Meaning:</b> not initialized
Port	SINT	GSV SSV	Indicates which port the message should be sent on. <b>Value:</b> 1 <b>Meaning:</b> backplane 2 serial port
TimeoutMultiplier	SINT	GSV SSV	Determines when a connection should be considered timed out and closed. <b>Value:</b> 0 <b>Meaning:</b> connection will timeout in 4 times the update rate default) 1 connection will timeout in 8 times the update rate 2 connection will timeout in 16 times the update rate
UnconnectedTimeout	DINT	GSV SSV	Timeout in microseconds for all unconnected messages. The default is 30,000,000 microseconds (30 s).

## MODULE attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
EntryStatus	INT	GSV	<p>Specifies the current state of the specified map entry. The lower 12 bits should be masked when performing a comparison operation. Only bits 12-15 are valid.</p> <p><b>Value:</b>            16#0000            16#1000            16#2000            16#3000            16#4000            16#5000            16#6000            16#7000</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b>  <b>Standby:</b> the controller is powering up.  <b>Faulted:</b> any of the MODULE object's connections to the associated module fail. This value should not be used to determine if the module failed because the MODULE object leaves this state periodically when trying to reconnect to the module. Instead, test for Running state (16#4000). Check for FaultCode not equal to 0 to determine if a module is faulted. When Faulted, the FaultCode and FaultInfo attributes are valid until the fault condition is corrected.  <b>Validating:</b> the MODULE object is verifying MODULE object integrity prior to establishing connections to the module.  <b>Connecting:</b> the MODULE object is initiating connections to the module.  <b>Running:</b> all connections to the module are established and data is transferring.  <b>Shutting down:</b> the MODULE object is in the process of shutting down all connections to the module.  <b>Inhibited:</b> the MODULE object is inhibited (the inhibit bit in the Mode attribute is set).  <b>Waiting:</b> the parent object upon which this MODULE object depends is not running.</p>
FaultCode	INT	GSV	A number which identifies a module fault, if one occurs.
FaultInfo	DINT	GSV	Provides specific information about the MODULE object fault code.
ForceStatus	INT	GSV	<p>Specifies the status of forces.</p> <p><b>Bit:</b>            0            1</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b>            forces installed (1=yes, 0=no)            forces enabled (1=yes, 0=no)</p>
Instance	DINT	GSV	Provides the instance number of this MODULE object.

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
LEDStatus	INT	GSV	<p>Specifies the current state of the I/O LED on the front of the controller.</p> <p><b>Value:</b>     <b>Meaning:</b>            0            <b>LED off:</b> No MODULE objects are configured for the controller (there are no modules in the I/O Configuration section of the controller organizer).            1            Flashing red: None of the MODULE objects are Running.            2            Flashing green: At least one MODULE object is not Running.            3            Solid green: All the Module objects are Running.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You do not enter an object name with this attribute because this attribute applies to the entire collection of modules.</p>
Mode	INT	GSV SSV	<p>Specifies the current mode of the MODULE object.</p> <p><b>Bit:</b>       <b>Meaning:</b>            0            If set, causes a major fault to be generated if any of the MODULE object connections fault while the controller is in Run mode.            2            If set, causes the MODULE object to enter Inhibited state after shutting down all the connections to the module.</p>

## PROGRAM attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
DisableFlag	SINT	GSV SSV	<p>Controls this program's execution.</p> <p><b>Value:</b>     <b>Meaning:</b>            0            execution enabled            1            execution disabled</p>
Instance	DINT	GSV	Provides the instance number of this PROGRAM object.

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
LastScanTime	DINT	GSV SSV	Time it took to execute this program the last time it was executed. Time is in microseconds.
MajorFaultRecord	DINT[11]	GSV SSV	Records major faults for this program We recommend that you create a user-defined structure to simplify access to the MajorFaultRecord attribute:
<b>Name:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Style:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
TimeLow	DINT	Decimal	lower 32 bits of fault timestamp value
TimeHigh	DINT	Decimal	upper 32 bits of fault timestamp value
Type	INT	Decimal	fault type (program, I/O, etc.)
Code	INT	Decimal	unique code for the fault (depends on fault type)
Info	DINT[8]	Hexadecimal	fault specific information (depends on fault type and code)
MaxScanTime	DINT	GSV SSV	Maximum recorded execution time for this program. Time is in microseconds.
MinorFaultRecord	DINT[11]	GSV SSV	Records minor faults for this program We recommend that you create a user-defined structure to simplify access to the MinorFaultRecord attribute:
<b>Name:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Style:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
TimeLow	DINT	Decimal	lower 32 bits of fault timestamp value
TimeHigh	DINT	Decimal	upper 32 bits of fault timestamp value
Type	INT	Decimal	fault type (program, I/O, etc.)
Code	INT	Decimal	unique code for the fault (depends on fault type)
Info	DINT[8]	Hexadecimal	fault specific information (depends on fault type and code)
SFCRestart	INT	GSV SSV	unused - reserved for future use

## REDUNDANCY attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
ChassisRedundancyState	INT	GSV	<p>Redundancy status of the entire chassis.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 16#1 16#2 16#3 16#4</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> power-up or undetermined primary with qualified secondary primary with disqualified secondary primary with no secondary</p>
CompatibilityResults	INT	GSV	<p>The results of the compatibility checks with the partner controller.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 0 1 2</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> undetermined no compatible partner fully compatible partner</p>
KeyswitchAlarm	DINT	GSV	<p>The keyswitch settings of the controller and its partner match or do not match.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 0 1</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> the keyswitches match or no partner is present keyswitches do not match</p>
ModuleRedundancyState	INT	GSV	<p>Redundancy status of the controller.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 16#1 16#2 16#3 16#4 16#6</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> power-up or undetermined primary with qualified secondary primary with disqualified secondary primary with no secondary primary with qualifying secondary</p>

## 6 - 18 Accessing System Values

---

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
PartnerChassisRedundancyState	INT	GSV	Redundancy state of the partner chassis. <b>Value:</b> 16#8 <b>Meaning:</b> qualified secondary 16#9 disqualified secondary with primary
PartnerKeyswitch	DINT	GSV	Position of the keyswitch of the partner. <b>Value:</b> 0 <b>Meaning:</b> unknown 1 RUN 2 PROG 3 REM
PartnerMinorFaults	DINT	GSV	Minor faults of the partner (if the ModuleRedundancyState indicates that a partner is present). <b>Value:</b> 4 <b>Meaning:</b> problem with an instruction (program) 6 periodic task overlap (watchdog) 9 problem with the serial port 10 low battery



Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
PartnerMode	DINT	GSV	<p>Mode of the partner.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 16#0 16#1 16#2 16#3 16#4 16#5 16#6 16#7 16#8 16#9 16#A 16#B 16#C</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> power up program run test faulted run-to-program test-to-program program-to-run test-to-run run-to-test program-to-test into faulted faulted-to-program</p>
PartnerModuleRedundancyState	INT	GSV	<p>Redundancy state of the partner.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 16#7 16#8 16#9</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> qualifying secondary qualified secondary disqualified secondary with primary</p>
PhysicalChassisID	INT	GSV	<p>In a pair of redundant chassis, identifies a specific chassis without regard to the state of the chassis.</p> <p><b>Value:</b> 0 1 2</p> <p><b>Meaning:</b> unknown Chassis A Chassis B</p>



Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
QualificationInProgress	INT	GSV	Status of the qualification process. <b>Value:</b> -1 0 1 - 99 <b>Meaning:</b> qualification is not in progress unsupported for modules that can measure their completion percentage, the percent of qualification that is complete; for modules that cannot measure their completion percentage, 50 = qualification is in progress and 100 = qualification is complete.
SRMSlotNumber	INT	GSV	Slot number of the 1757-SRM module in this chassis
LastDataTransferSize	DINT	GSV	This attribute is only valid on a primary controller that is configured for redundancy. <b>If:</b> a synchronized partner is present <b>Then this value is the:</b> amount of data that was last transferred to the partner, specified in DINTs no partner is present or a disqualified partner is present amount of data that would have been last transferred to a synchronized partner, specified in DINTs
MaxDataTransferSize	DINT	GSV SSV	Maximum value of the LastDataTransferSize attribute. This attribute is only valid on a primary controller that is configured for redundancy. To reset this value, use an SSV instruction with a Source value of 0.

## ROUTINE attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
Instance	DINT	GSV	Provides the instance number of this ROUTINE object. Valid values are 0-65,535.

**SERIALPORT attribute**

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
BaudRate	DINT	GSV	Specifies the baud rate. Valid values are 110, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, and 19200 (default).
DataBits	SINT	GSV	Specifies the number of bits of data per character. <b>Value:</b> 7 8 <b>Meaning:</b> 7 data bits (ASCII only) 8 data bits (default)
Parity	SINT	GSV	Specifies the parity. <b>Value:</b> 0 1 2 <b>Meaning:</b> no parity (no default) odd parity (ASCII only) even parity
RTSoffDelay	INT	GSV	Amount of time to delay turning off the RTS line after the last character has been transmitted. Valid value 0-32,767. Delay in counts of 20 msec periods. The default is 0 msec.
RTSSendDelay	INT	GSV	Amount of time to delay transmitting the first character of a message after turning on the RTS line. Valid value 0-32,767. Delay in counts of 20 msec periods. The default is 0 msec.
StopBits	SINT	GSV	Specifies the number of stop bits. <b>Value:</b> 1 2 <b>Meaning:</b> 1 stop bit (default) 2 stop bits (ASCII only)
PendingBaudRate	DINT	SSV	Pending value for the BaudRate attribute.
PendingDataBits	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the DataBits attribute.
PendingParity	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the Parity attribute.

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
PendingRTSOFFDelay	INT	SSV	Pending value for the RTSOffDelay attribute.
PendingRTSSendDelay	INT	SSV	Pending value for the RTSSendDelay attribute.
PendingStopBits	SINT	SSV	Pending value for the StopBits attribute.

## TASK attributes

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
DisableUpdateOutputs	DINT	GSV SSV	Enables or disables the processing of outputs at the end of a task. <b>Value:</b> 0 non zero <b>Meaning:</b> enable the processing of outputs at the end of the task disable the processing of outputs at the end of the task
InhibitTask	DINT	GSV SSV	Prevents the task from executing. If a task is inhibited, the controller still prescans the task when the controller transitions from program to run or test mode. <b>Value:</b> 0 non zero <b>Meaning:</b> enable the task 0 (default) inhibit (disable) the task
Instance	DINT	GSV	Provides the instance number of this TASK object. Valid values are 0-31.
LastScanTime	DINT	GSV SSV	Time it took to execute this task the last time it was executed. Time is in microseconds.
MaxInterval	DINT[2]	GSV SSV	The maximum time interval between successive executions of the task. DINT[0] contains the lower 32 bits of the value; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits of the value. A value of 0 indicates 1 or less executions of the task.

Attribute:	Data Type:	Instruction:	Description:
MaxScanTime	DINT	GSV SSV	Maximum recorded execution time for this program. Time is in microseconds.
MinInterval	DINT[2]	GSV SSV	The minimum time interval between successive executions of the task. DINT[0] contains the lower 32 bits of the value; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits of the value. A value of 0 indicates 1 or less executions of the task.
OverlapCount	DINT	GSV SSV	Number of times that the task was triggered while it was still executing. Valid for an event or a periodic task. To clear the count, set the attribute to 0.
Priority	INT	GSV	Relative priority of this task as compared to the other tasks. Valid values 0-15.
Rate	DINT	GSV	The time interval between executions of the task. Time is in microseconds.
StartTime	DINT[2]	GSV SSV	Value of WALLCLOCKTIME when the last execution of the task was started. DINT[0] contains the lower 32 bits of the value; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits of the value.
Status	DINT	GSV SSV	Status information about the task. Once the controller sets one of these bits, you must manually clear the bit. <b>Bit:</b> 0 1 2 <b>Meaning:</b> an EVNT instruction triggered the task (event task only) a timeout triggered the task (event task only) an overlap occurred for this task

## 6 - 24 Accessing System Values

---

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
Timeout	DINT	GSV SSV	The timeout value for an event task. Time is in microseconds.
EnableTimeOut	DINT	GSV SSV	Enables or disables the timeout function of an event task. <b>Value:</b> 0 non zero <b>Meaning:</b> disable the timeout function enable the timeout function
Watchdog	DINT	GSV SSV	Time limit for execution of all programs associated with this task. Time is in microseconds. If you enter 0, these values are assigned: <b>Time:</b> 0.5 sec 5.0 sec <b>Task Type:</b> periodic continuous

**WALLCLOCKTIME attributes**

<b>Attribute:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
CSTOffset	DINT[2]	GSV SSV	Positive offset from the CurrentValue of the CST object (coordinated system time, see page 6-7). DINT[0] contains the lower 32 bits of the value; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits of the value. Value in $\mu$ s. The default is 0.
CurrentValue	DINT[2]	GSV SSV	Current value of the wall clock time. DINT[0] contains the lower 32 bits of the value; DINT[1] contains the upper 32 bits of the value. The value is the number of microseconds that have elapsed since 0000 hours 1 January 1972. The CST and WALLCLOCKTIME objects are mathematically related in the controller. For example, if you add the CST CurrentValue and the WALLCLOCKTIME CTSOffset, the result is the WALLCLOCKTIME CurrentValue.
DateTime	DINT[7]	GSV SSV	The date and time in a readable format. DINT[0] year DINT[1] integer representation of month (1-12) DINT[2] integer representation of day (1-31) DINT[3] hour (0-23) DINT[4] minute (0-59) DINT[5] seconds (0-59) DINT[6] microseconds (0-999,999)

## Determine Controller Memory Information

Depending on your type of controller, the memory of the controller may be divided into several areas:

If you have this controller:	Then it stores this:	In this memory:	
ControlLogix	I/O tags	I/O memory	
	produced tags		
	consumed tags		
	communication via Message (MSG) instructions		
	communication with workstations		
	communication with polled (OPC/DDE) tags that use RSLinx software <sup>(1)</sup>		
	tags other than I/O, produced, or consumed tags		data and logic memory <sup>(2)</sup>
	logic routines		
CompactLogix FlexLogix PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix SoftLogix	These controllers do not divide their memory. They store all elements in one common memory area. When you use the following procedure to get the memory values for these controllers, the values show up as I/O memory.		

<sup>(1)</sup> To communicate with polled tags, the controller uses both I/O and data and logic memory.

<sup>(2)</sup> 1756-L55M16 controllers have an additional memory section for logic.



To get memory information from the controller, use a MSG instruction:

## MSG Configuration Tab

<b>For this item:</b>	<b>Type or select:</b>	<b>Which means:</b>
Message Type	CIP Generic	Execute a Control and Information Protocol command.
Service Type	Custom	Create a CIP Generic message that is not available in the drop-down list.
Service Code	3	Use the GetAttributeList service. This lets you read specific information about the controller.
Class	72	Get information from the user memory object.
Instance	1	This object contains only 1 instance.
Attribute	0	Null value

<b>For this item:</b>	<b>Type or select:</b>	<b>Which means:</b>	
Source Element	<i>source_array</i> of type SINT[12]		
	<b>In this element:</b>	<b>Enter:</b>	<b>Which means:</b>
	<i>source_array</i> [0]	5	Get 5 attributes
	<i>source_array</i> [1]	0	Null value
	<i>source_array</i> [2]	1	Get free memory
	<i>source_array</i> [3]	0	Null value
	<i>source_array</i> [4]	2	Get total memory
	<i>source_array</i> [5]	0	Null value
	<i>source_array</i> [6]	5	Get largest contiguous block of additional free logic memory
	<i>source_array</i> [7]	0	Null value
	<i>source_array</i> [8]	6	Get largest contiguous block of free I/O memory
	<i>source_array</i> [9]	0	Null value
	<i>source_array</i> [10]	7	Get largest contiguous block of free data and logic memory
	<i>source_array</i> [11]	0	Null value
Source Length	12	Write 12 bytes (12 SINTs).	
Destination	<i>INT_array</i> of type INT[29]		

## MSG Communication Tab

For this item:	Type:
Path	1, <i>slot_number_of_controller</i>

The MSG instruction returns the following information to *INT\_array* (destination tag of the MSG):

If you want the:	Then copy these array elements:	Description:
amount of free I/O memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [3]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [4]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
amount of free data and logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [5]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [6]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
1756-L55M16 controllers only—amount of additional free logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [7]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [8]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
total size of I/O memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [11]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [12]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
total size of data and logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [13]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [14]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
1756-L55M16 controllers only—additional logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [15]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [16]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value

<b>If you want the:</b>	<b>Then copy these array elements:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
1756-L55M16 controllers only—largest contiguous block of additional free logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [19]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [20]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
largest contiguous block of free I/O memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [23]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [24]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value
largest contiguous block of free data and logic memory (32-bit words)	<i>INT_array</i> [27]	lower 16 bits of the 32 bit value
	<i>INT_array</i> [28]	upper 16 bits of the 32 bit value

The MSG instruction returns each memory value as two separate INTs.

- The first INT represents the lower 16 bits of the value.
- The second INT represents the upper 16 bits of the value.

To convert the separate INTs into one usable value, use a Copy (COP) instruction, where:

<b>In this operand:</b>	<b>Specify:</b>	<b>Which means:</b>
Source	first INT of the 2 element pair (lower 16 bits)	Start with the lower 16 bits
Destination	DINT tag in which to store the 32-bit value	Copy the value to the DINT tag.
Length	1	Copy 1 times the number of bytes in the Destination data type. In this case, the instruction copies 4 bytes (32 bits), which combines the lower and upper 16 bits into one 32-bit value.

## Communication Options

Select a method for transferring data between controllers:

<b>If the data:</b>	<b>Then:</b>	<b>See page:</b>
needs regular delivery at a rate that you specify (i.e., deterministic)	produce and consume a tag	7-2
is sent when a specific condition occurs in your application	send a message	7-9
is transmitted between Logix controllers and PLC or SLC processors	map PLC/SLC addresses	7-13
is gathered from multiple controllers (and consumed tags are not an option or not desired)	send a message to multiple controllers	7-13

## Produce and Consume a Tag

You can use produced and consumed tags with the following controller and network combinations.

<b>This controller:</b>	<b>Can produce and consume tags over this network:</b>		
	<b>Logix Backplane</b>	<b>ControlNet</b>	<b>EtherNet/IP</b>
SLC 500		X	
PLC-5		X	
ControlLogix	X	X	X
1769-L32E, -L35E CompactLogix			X
1769-L32C, -L35CR CompactLogix		X	
FlexLogix		X	X
PowerFlex 700S with DriveLogix		X	X
SoftLogix		X	X

Produced and consumed tags work as follows:

- A connection transfers the data between controllers:
  - Multiple controllers can consume (receive) the data.
  - The data updates at the requested packet interval (RPI), as configured by the consuming tags.

- Each produced or consumed tag uses the following number of connections:

<b>Each:</b>	<b>Uses this many connections at the local controller:</b>	<b>Uses this many connections at the communication device:</b>
produced tag	<i>number_of_consumers + 1</i>	<i>number_of_consumers</i>
consumed tag	1	1

Follow these guidelines:

- Create the tags at the controller scope. You can only share controller-scoped tags.
- Use one of these data types:
  - DINT
  - REAL
  - array of DINTs or REALs
  - user-defined
- Use the same data type for the produced tag and corresponding consumed tag (s).
- To share tags with a PLC-5C controller, use a user-defined data type.
- Limit the size of the tag to less than or equal to 500 bytes. If you must transfer more than 500 bytes, transfer the data in packets.
- If you are producing several tags for the same controller:
  - Group the data into one or more user-defined data types. (This uses less connections than producing each tag separately.)
  - Group the data according to similar update rates. (To conserve network bandwidth, use a greater RPI for less critical data.)

## Produce a tag

Name:

Description:

Tag Type:  Base  
 Alias  
 Produced  consumers  
 Consumed

Data Type:

Scope:

## Consume a tag

Name:

Description:

Tag Type:  Base  
 Alias  
 Produced  consumers  
 Consumed

Controller:  RPI (ms):

Remote Tag Name:

Data Type:

---

### IMPORTANT

If a consumed-tag connection fails, all of the other tags being consumed from that remote controller stop receiving new data.

---



## Produce tags for a PLC-5C controller

1. Create a user-defined data type that contains an array of INTs with an even number of elements, such as INT[2]. (When you produce INTs, you must produce two or more.)
2. Create a produced tag and select the user-defined data type.
3. In the ControlNet configuration for the target PLC-5C controller:
  - Insert a Receive Scheduled Message.
  - In the Message size, enter the number of integers in the produced tag.
4. In RSNetWorx for ControlNet software, schedule the network.

## Produce REALs for a PLC-5C controller

1. How many values do you want to produce?

<b>If you are producing:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
Only one REAL value	Create a produced tag and select the REAL data type.
More than one REAL value	A. Create a user-defined data type that contains an array of REALs. B. Create a produced tag and select the user-defined data type from Step A.

2. In the ControlNet configuration for the target PLC-5C controller:
  - Insert a Receive Scheduled Message.
  - In the Message size, enter two times the number of REALs in the produced tag. For example, if the produced tag contains 10 REALs, enter 20 for the Message size.

When a PLC-5C controller consumes a tag that is produced by a Logix5000 controller, it stores the data in consecutive 16-bit integers. The PLC-5C stores floating-point data, which requires 32-bits regardless of the type of controller, as follows:

- The first integer contains the upper (left-most) bits of the value.
  - The second integer contains the lower (right-most) bits of the value.
  - This pattern continues for each floating-point value.
3. In the PLC-5C controller, re-construct the floating point data, as depicted in the following example:
  4. In RSNetWorx for ControlNet software, schedule the network.

### Consume Integers from a PLC-5C Controller

1. In the ControlNet configuration of the PLC-5C controller, insert a Send Scheduled Message.
2. In the controller organizer, add the PLC-5C controller to the I/O configuration.
3. Create a user-defined data type that contains the following members:

Data type:	Description:
DINT	Status
INT[x], where "x" is the output size of the data from the PLC-5C controller. (If you are consuming only one INT, no dimension is required.)	Data produced by a PLC-5C controller

4. Create a consumed tag with the following properties:

For this tag property:	Type or select:
Tag Type	Consumed
Controller	The PLC-5C that is producing the data
Remote Instance	The message number from the ControlNet configuration of the PLC-5C controller
RPI	A power of two times the NUT of the ControlNet network. For example, if the NUT is 5ms, select an RPI of 5, 10, 20, 40, etc.
Data Type	The user-defined data type that you created.

5. In RSNetWorx for ControlNet software, schedule the network.

## Adjust for bandwidth limitations

When you share a tag over a ControlNet network, the tag must fit within the bandwidth of the network:

- As the number of connections increases, several connections may need to share a network update time (NUT).
- Since a ControlNet network can only pass 500 bytes in one NUT, the data of each connection must be less than 500 bytes.

Depending on the size of your system, you may not have enough bandwidth. You can make these adjustments:

- Reduce your NUT. At a faster NUT, less connections have to share an update slot.
- Increase the RPI of your connections. At higher RPIs, connections can take turns sending data during an update slot.
- For a ControlNet bridge module in a remote chassis, select the most efficient communication format for that chassis:

<b>Are most of the modules in the chassis non-diagnostic, digital I/O modules?</b>	<b>Then select this communication format for the remote CNB module:</b>
Yes	Rack Optimization
No	None

The Rack Optimization format uses an additional 8 bytes for each slot in its chassis. Analog modules or modules that are sending or getting diagnostic, fuse, timestamp, or schedule data require direct connections and cannot take advantage of the rack optimized form. Selecting “None” frees up the 8 bytes per slot for other uses, such as produced or consumed tags.

- Separate the tag into two or more smaller tags:
  - Group the data according to similar update rates.
  - Assign a different RPI to each tag.
- Create logic to transfer the data in smaller sections (packets).

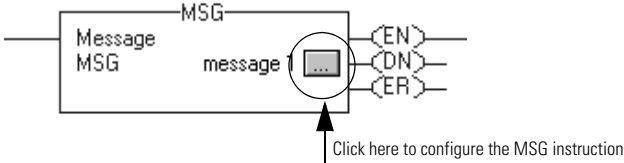
## Send a Message

For each message, create a tag to control the message:

- Create the tag at the controller scope.
- Use the MESSAGE data type.
- In the Logix5000 controller, use the **DINT** data type for integers whenever possible. Logix5000 controllers execute more efficiently and use less memory when working with 32-bit integers (DINTs).
- If your message is to or from a PLC-5<sup>®</sup> or SLC 500<sup>™</sup> controller *and* it transfers integers (not REALs), use a buffer of **INTs**:
  - Create a buffer for the data (controller scope) using the *INT[x]* data type.
  - Use an FAL instruction to move the data between the buffer and your application.

To send the same message to multiple controllers, reconfigure the MSG instruction during runtime, write new values to the members of the MESSAGE data type.

After you enter the MSG instruction and specify the MESSAGE structure, use the Message Configuration dialog box to specify the details of the message.



The details you configure depend on the message type you select.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Message Configuration - Message\_1" with three tabs: "Configuration\*", "Communication", and "Tag". The "Configuration\*" tab is active. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Message Type:** A dropdown menu with "CIP Data Table Read" selected.
- Source Element:** An empty text input field.
- Number Of Elements:** A spinner control with the value "1" displayed.
- Destination Element:** A dropdown menu.
- New Tag...:** A button located to the right of the Destination Element dropdown.
- Enable:** A radio button.
- Enable Waiting:** A radio button.
- Start:** A radio button.
- Done:** A radio button.
- Done Length:** A text field containing "0".
- Error Code:** A radio button.
- Extended Error Code:** A text field.
- Timed Out:** A checkbox with a left-pointing arrow.
- Error Path:** A text field.
- Error Text:** A text field.
- Buttons:** "OK", "Cancel", "Apply", and "Help" buttons are located at the bottom of the dialog.

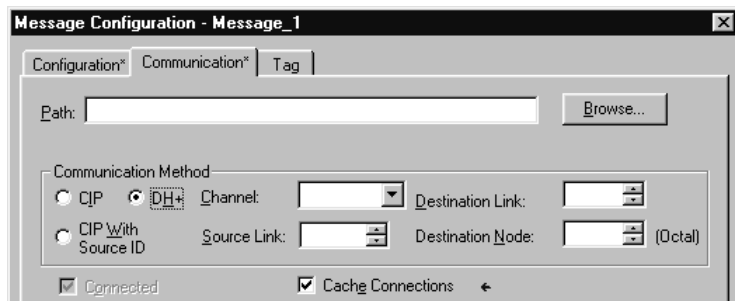
Specify the message type:

If the target device is a:	Select one of these message types:
Logix controller	CIP Data Table Read/Write
I/O module that you configure using RSLogix 5000 software	Module Reconfigure
	CIP Generic
PLC-5 controller	PLC5 Typed Read/Write
	PLC5 Word Range Read/Write
SLC controller MicroLogix controller	SLC Typed Read/Write
	Block-Transfer Read/Write
PLC-3 processor	PLC3 Typed Read/write
	PLC3 Word Range Read/write
PLC-2 processor	PLC2 Unprotected Read/write

Then, specify this configuration information:

For this property:	Specify:
Source Element	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select a read message type, the Source Element is the address of the data you want to read in the target device. Use the addressing syntax of the target device.</li> <li>If you select a write message type, the Source Tag is the first element of the tag that you want to send to the target device.</li> </ul>
Number of Elements	The number of elements you read/write depends on the type of data you are using. An element refers to one “chunk” of related data. For example, tag <i>timer1</i> is one element that consists of one timer control structure.
Destination Element	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select a read message type, the Destination Element is the first element of the tag in the Logix5000 controller where you want to store the data you read from the target device.</li> <li>If you select a write message type, the Destination Element is the address of the location in the target device where you want to write the data.</li> </ul>

When you configure a MSG instruction, specify these details on the Communication tab.



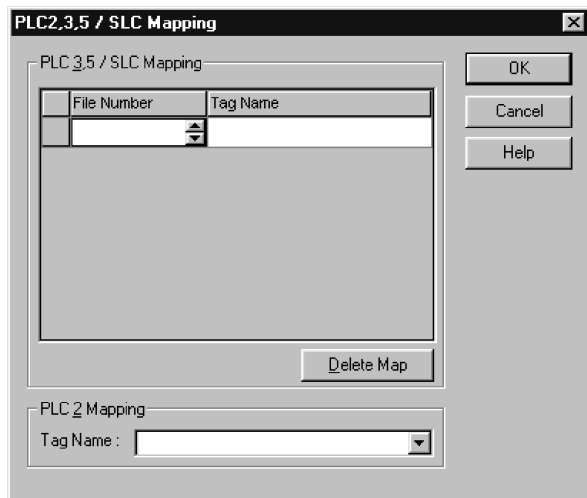


## Map PLC/SLC Addresses

You only map PLC/SLC addresses if you send a message from a PLC or SLC 500 processor to a Logix controller and the PLC/SLC processor does not support logical ASCII addressing. To use a logical address (e.g., N7:0) to specify a value (tag) in a Logix controller, you must map files to tags:

- You only have to map the file numbers that are used in messages; the other file numbers do not need to be mapped.
- The mapping table is loaded into the controller and is used whenever a “logical” address accesses data.
- You can only access controller-scoped tags (global data).

For each file that is referenced in a PLC or SLC command, make a map entry:



- Type the file number of the logical address.
- Type or select the controller-scoped (global) tag that supplies or receives data for the file number. (You can map multiple files to the same tag.)
- For PLC-2 commands, specify the tag that supplies or receives the data.

## Send a Message to Multiple Devices

To send a message to multiple devices:

- Define source and destination elements
- Create the MESSAGE\_CONFIGURATION data type
- Create the configuration array
- Get the size of the local array
- Load the message properties for a device
- Configure the message
- Step to the next device

### Define source and destination elements

An array stores the data that is read from or written to each remote controller. Each element in the array corresponds to a different remote device. Create the *local\_array* tag, which stores the data in this controller.



Tag Name	Type
local_array	<i>data_type</i> [ <i>length</i> ] where: <i>data_type</i> is the data type of the data that the message sends or receives, such as DINT, REAL, or STRING. <i>length</i> is the number of elements in the local array.

## Create the MESSAGE\_CONFIGURATION data type

Create a user-defined data type to store the configuration variables for the message to each device.

- Some of the required members of the data type use a string data type.
- The default STRING data type stores 82 characters.
- If your paths or remote tag names or addresses use less than 82 characters, you have the option of creating a new string type that stores fewer characters. This lets you conserve memory.
- To create a new string type, choose *File* ⇒ *New Component* ⇒ *String Type...*
- If you create a new string type, use it in place of the STRING data type in this procedure.

To store the configuration variables for the message to each controller, create the following user-defined data type.

Data Type: MESSAGE_CONFIGURATION				
<b>Name</b>		MESSAGE_CONFIGURATION		
<b>Description</b>		Configuration properties for a message to another controller		
<b>Members</b>				
	Name	Data Type	Style	Description
	 Path	STRING		
	 RemoteElement	STRING		

## Create the configuration array

Store the configuration properties for each device in an array. Before each execution of the MSG instruction, your logic loads new properties into the instruction. This sends the message to a different controller.

1. Create this array:

Tag Name	Type	Scope
message_config	MESSAGE_CONFIGURATION[ <i>number</i> ]	any

where *number* is the number of devices to which to send the message.

2. Into the *message\_config* array, enter the **path** to the first controller that receives the message.

Tag Name	Value
[-] message_config	{...}
[-] message_config[0]	{...}
[+] message_config[0].Path	
[+] message_config[0].RemoteElement	

Right-click and choose *Go to Message Path Editor*.



Type the **path** to the remote controller.



or

Browse to the remote controller.



**Message Path Browser**

Path:

peer\_controller

I/O Configuration

3. Into the *message\_config* array, enter the tag name or address of the data in the first controller to receive the message.

Tag Name	Value
[-] message_config	{...}
[-] message_config[0]	{...}
[+] message_config[0].Path	
[+] message_config[0].RemoteElement	...
[-] message_config[1]	{...}
[+] message_config[1].Path	
[+] message_config[1].RemoteElement	

The image shows a 'String Browser' dialog box with a large empty text area. An arrow points from the '...' value in the 'message\_config[0].RemoteElement' row of the table above to the text area of the String Browser. The String Browser has a title bar, a close button, and a status bar at the bottom showing 'Position: 0 Count: 0 of 82' and 'Errors'.

Type the tag name or address of the data in the other controller.

4. Enter the path and remote element for each additional controller:

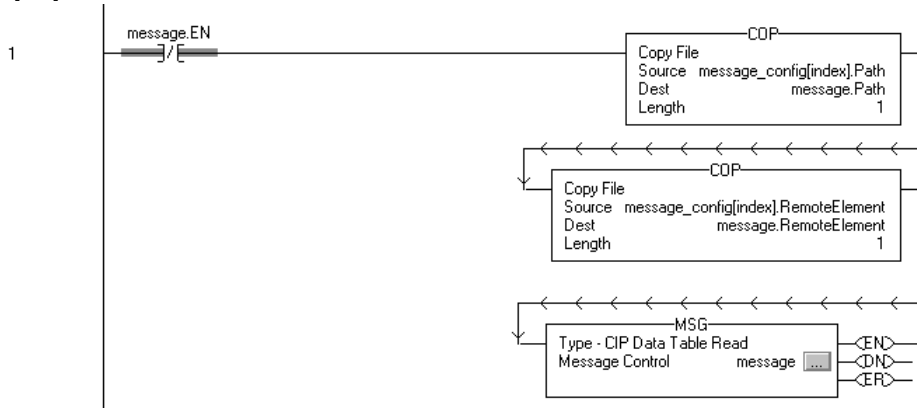
Tag Name	Value
[-] message_config	{...}
[-] message_config[0]	{...}
[+] message_config[0].Path	
[+] message_config[0].RemoteElement	
[-] message_config[1]	{...}
[+] message_config[1].Path	←
[+] message_config[1].RemoteElement	←



### Get the size of the local array

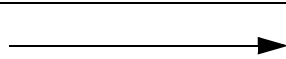


### Load the message properties for a device

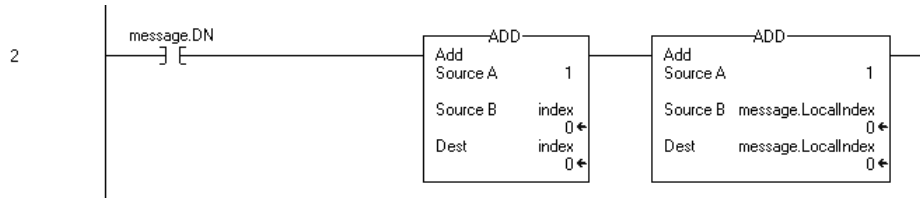


## Configure the message

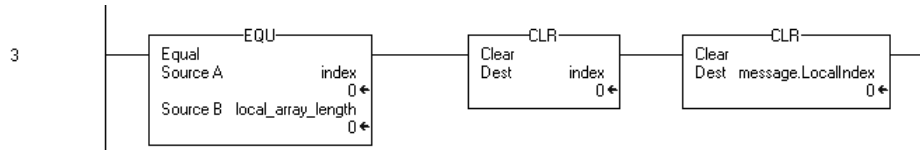
Although your logic controls the remote element and path for the message, the Message Properties dialog box requires an initial configuration. Make sure to clear the Cache Connections option.

On this tab:	If you want to:	For this item:	Type or select:
Configuration	read (receive) data from the other controllers	Message Type	the read-type that corresponds to the other controllers
		Source Element	tag or address that contains the data in the first controller
		Number Of Elements	1
		Destination Tag	local_array[*]
		Index	0
	write (send) data to the other controllers	Message Type	the write-type that corresponds to other controllers
		Source Tag	local_array[*]
		Index	0
		Number Of Elements	1
		Destination Element	tag or address that contains the data in the first controller
Communication		Path	path to the first controller
		Cache Connections	Clear the <i>Cache Connection</i> check box. Since this procedure continuously changes the path of the message, it is more efficient to clear this check box.

### Step to the next controller



### Restart the sequence



**Notes:**

## What You Can Force

Use a force to override data that your logic either uses or produces. For example, use forces in the following situations:

- test and debug your logic
- check wiring to an output device
- temporarily keep your process functioning when an input device has failed

Use forces only as a temporary measure. They are *not* intended to be a permanent part of your application.

You can force the following elements:

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
override an input value, output value, produced tag, or consumed tag	add an I/O force
override the conditions of a transition one time to go from an active step to the next step	step through a transition or a force of a path
override one time the force of a simultaneous path and execute the steps of the path	
override the conditions of a transition in a sequential function chart	add an SFC force
execute some but not all the paths of a simultaneous branch of a sequential function chart	

## 8 - 2 Forcing

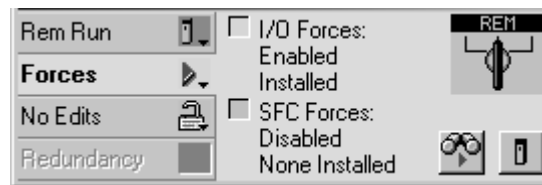
Before you use a force, determine the status of forces for the controller:

**Use this method:**    **To determine the status of:**    **Description:**

online toolbar

I/O forces  
SFC forces

Forces tab →



FORCE LED

I/O forces

**If the FORCE LED is:**

**Then:**

off

- No tags contain force values.
- I/O forces are inactive (disabled).

flashing

- At least one tag contains a force value.
- I/O forces are inactive (disabled).

solid

- I/O forces are active (enabled).
- Force values may or may not exist.

continued

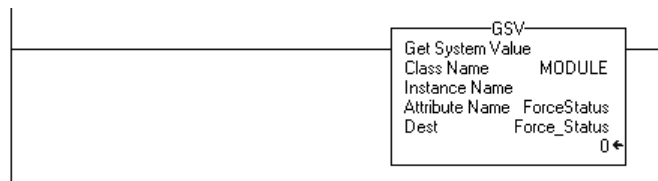
---

**Use this method:**    **To determine the status of:**    **Description:**

---

GSV instruction    I/O forces

---



*Force\_Status* is a DINT tag.

<b>To determine if:</b>	<b>Examine this bit:</b>	<b>For this value:</b>
forces are installed	0	1
<i>no</i> forces are installed	0	0
forces are enabled	1	1
forces are disabled	1	0

---

## Force I/O

Use an I/O force to accomplish the following:

- override an input value from another controller (i.e., a consumed tag)
- override an input value from an input device
- override your logic and specify an output value for another controller (i.e., a produced tag)
- override your logic and specify the state of an output device

---

**IMPORTANT**

Forcing increases logic execution time. The more values you force, the longer it takes to execute the logic.

---

---

**IMPORTANT**

I/O forces are held by the controller and not by the programming workstation. Forces remain even if the programming workstation is disconnected.

---



When you force an I/O value:

- You can force all I/O data, except for configuration data.
- If the tag is an array or structure, such as an I/O tag, force a BOOL, SINT, INT, DINT, or REAL element or member.
- If the data value is a SINT, INT, or DINT, you can force the entire value or you can force individual bits within the value.
- You can also force an alias to an I/O structure member, produced tag, or consumed tag. An alias tag shares the same data value as its base tag, so forcing an alias tag also forces the associated base tag.

Forcing an input or consumed tag:

- overrides the value regardless of the value of the physical device or produced tag
- does not affect the value received by other controllers monitoring that input or produced tag

Forcing an output or produced tag overrides the logic for the physical device or other controller (s). Other controllers monitoring that output module in a listen-only capacity will also see the forced value.

To force I/O:

1. What is the state of the I/O Forces indicator?

<b>If:</b>	<b>Then note the following:</b>
off	No I/O forces currently exist.
flashing	No I/O forces are active. But at least one force already exists in your project. When you enable I/O forces, <i>all</i> existing I/O forces will also take effect.
solid	I/O forces are enabled (active). When you install (add) a force, it immediately takes effect.

2. Open the routine that contains the tag that you want to force.
3. Right-click the tag and choose *Monitor...* If necessary, expand the tag to show the value that you want to force.
4. Install the force value:

To force a:	Do this:
BOOL value	Right-click the tag and choose <i>Force ON</i> or <i>Force OFF</i> .
non-BOOL value	In the <i>Force Mask</i> column for the tag, type the value to which you want to force the tag. Then press the <i>Enter</i> key.

5. Are I/O forces enabled? (See **step 1.**)

If:	Then:
no	From the <i>Logic</i> menu, choose <i>I/O Forcing</i> ⇒ <i>Enable All I/O Forces</i> . Then choose <i>Yes</i> to confirm.
yes	Stop.

## Step Through a Transition

To override a false transition one time and go from an active step to the next step, use the *Step Through* option. With the *Step Through* option:

- You *do not* have to add, enable, disable, or remove forces.
- The next time the SFC reaches the transition, it executes according to the conditions of the transition.

To step through the transition of an active step or a force of a simultaneous path:

1. Open the SFC routine.
2. Right-click the transition or the path that is forced and choose *Step Through*.

## Force an SFC

To override the logic of an SFC, you have the following options:

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
override the conditions of a transition each time the SFC reaches the transition	Force a Transition
prevent the execution of one or more paths of a simultaneous branch	Force a Simultaneous Path

## Force a Transition

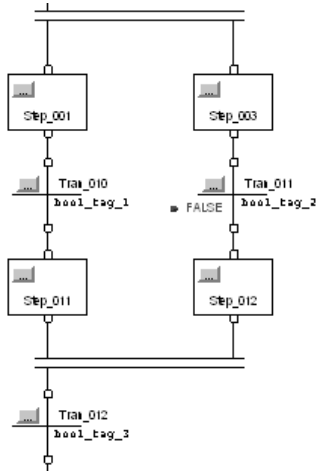
To override the conditions of a transition through repeated executions of an SFC, force the transition. The force remains until you remove it or disable forces

<b>If you want to:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
prevent the SFC from going to the next step	force the transition false
cause the SFC go to the next step regardless of transition conditions	force the transition true

If you force a transition within a simultaneous branch to be false, the SFC stays in the simultaneous branch as long as the force is active (installed and enabled).

- To leave a simultaneous branch, the last step of each path must execute at least one time and the transition below the branch must be true.
- Forcing a transition false prevents the SFC from reaching the last step of a path.

- When you remove or disable the force, the SFC can execute the rest of the steps in the path.

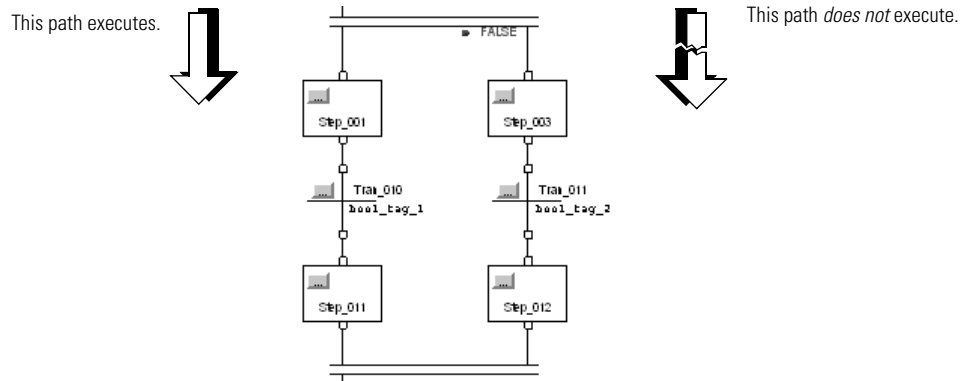


For example, to exit this branch, the SFC must be able to:

- execute *Step\_011* at least once
- get past *Tran\_011* and execute *Step\_012* at least once
- determine that *Tran\_012* is true

## Force a Simultaneous Path

To prevent the execution of a path of a simultaneous branch, force the path false. When the SFC reaches the branch, it executes only the un-forced paths.



If you force a path of a simultaneous branch to be false, the SFC stays in the simultaneous branch as long as the force is active (installed and enabled).

- To leave a simultaneous branch, the last step of each path must execute at least one time and the transition below the branch must be true.
- Forcing a path false prevents the SFC from entering a path and executing its steps.
- When you remove or disable the force, the SFC can execute the steps in the path.

To force an SFC:

1. What is the state of the SFC Forces indicator?

<b>If:</b>	<b>Then note the following:</b>
off	No SFC forces currently exist.
flashing	No SFC forces are active. But at least one force already exists in your project. When you enable SFC forces, <i>all</i> existing SFC forces will also take effect.
solid	SFC forces are enabled (active). When you install (add) a force, it immediately takes effect.

2. Open the SFC routine.
3. Right-click the transition or start of a simultaneous path that you want to force, and choose either *Force TRUE* (only for a transition) or *Force FALSE*.
4. Are SFC forces enabled?

<b>If:</b>	<b>Then:</b>
no	From the <i>Logic</i> menu, choose <i>SFC Forcing</i> ⇒ <i>Enable All SFC Forces</i> . Then choose <i>Yes</i> to confirm.
yes	Stop.

**Notes:**



## Controller Faults

The controller stores different fault information:

<b>Fault type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	<b>See page:</b>
major fault	A fault condition that is severe enough for the controller to shut down, unless the condition is cleared. When a major fault occurs, the controller: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Sets a major fault bit</li><li>2. Runs user-supplied fault logic, if it exists</li><li>3. If the user-supplied fault logic cannot clear the fault, the controller goes to faulted mode</li><li>4. Sets outputs according to their output state during program mode</li><li>5. OK LED flashes red</li></ol>	9-2
minor fault	A fault condition that is <i>not</i> severe enough for the controller to shut down.	9-10
user-defined faults	If you want to suspend (shut down) the controller based on conditions in your application, create a user-defined major fault. With a user-defined major fault: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You define a value for the fault code.</li><li>• The controller handles the fault the same as other major faults:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– The controller changes to the faulted mode (major fault) and stops executing the logic.</li><li>– Outputs are set to their configured state or value for faulted mode.</li></ul></li></ul>	9-15

## Major Faults

If a fault condition occurs that is severe enough for the controller to shut down, the controller generates a major fault and stops the execution of logic.

1. Create the following user-defined data type. It stores information about the fault.

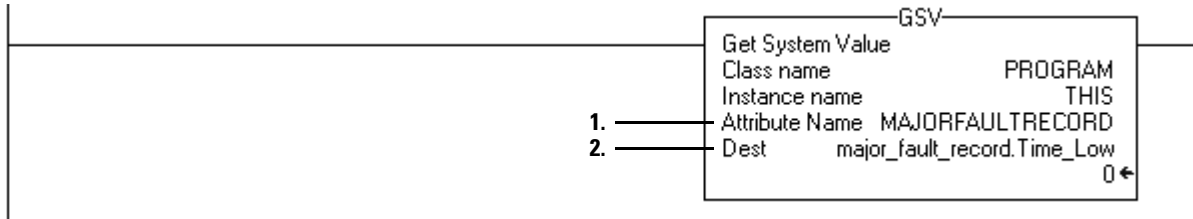
<b>Data Type: FAULTRECORD</b>				
<b>Name</b>	FAULTRECORD			
<b>Description</b>	Stores the MajorFaultRecord attribute or MinorFaultRecord attribute of the PROGRAM object.			
<b>Members</b>				
	<b>Name</b>	<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Style</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Time_Low	DINT	Decimal	lower 32 bits of the fault timestamp value
	Time_High	DINT	Decimal	upper 32 bits of the fault timestamp value
	Type	INT	Decimal	fault type (program, I/O, etc.)
	Code	INT	Decimal	unique code for the fault
	Info	DINT[8]	Hex	fault specific information

2. Create a fault routine to clear specific faults and let the controller resume execution. Where you place the routine depends on the type of fault that you want to clear:

<b>For a fault due to:</b>	<b>Do this:</b>
execution of an instruction	Create a fault routine for the program: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the controller organizer, right-click the program and select New Routine.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. In the name box, type a name for the fault routine.</li> <li>b. From the Type drop-down list, select Ladder.</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Right-click the program and select Properties.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click the Configuration tab.</li> <li>b. From the Fault drop-down list, select the fault routine</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
power loss	Create a program and main routine for the Controller Fault Handler: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the controller organizer, right-click Controller Fault Handler and select New Program.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enter the name of the program and a description.</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Click the + sign next to Controller Fault Handler.</li> </ul>
I/O	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right-click the program and select the New Routine               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enter the name of the routine and a description.</li> <li>b. From the Type drop-down list, select the programming language for the routine.</li> <li>c. Right-click the program and select Properties.</li> <li>d. Click the Configuration tab.</li> <li>e. From the Main drop-down list, select the routine</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
task watchdog	
mode change	
motion axis	

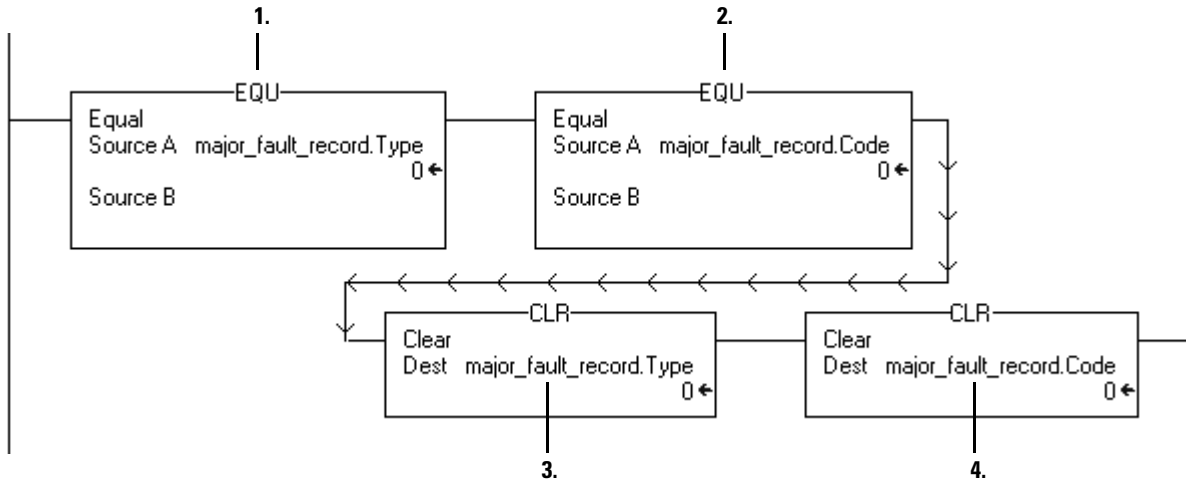
3. To clear a major fault that occurs during the execution of your project, use the following logic to:

- Get the fault type and code



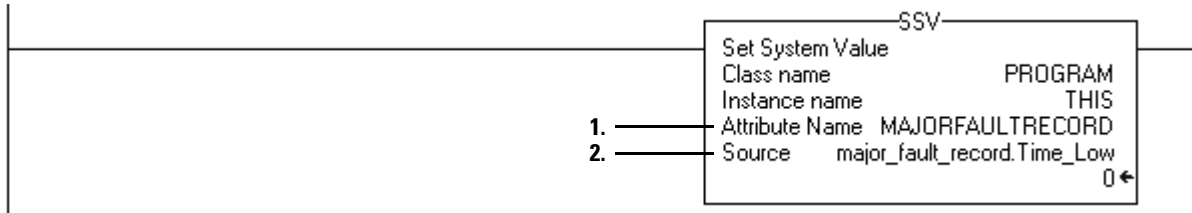
1. The GSV instruction accesses the MAJORFAULTRECORD attribute of this program.
2. The GSV instruction stores the fault information in the major\_fault\_record tag.

- Check for a specific fault



1. This EQU instruction checks for a specific type of fault, such as program, I/O. In Source B, enter the value for the type of fault that you want to clear.
2. This EQU instruction checks for a specific fault code. In Source B, enter the value for the code that you want to clear.
3. This CLR instruction sets to zero the value of the fault type in the `major_fault_record` tag.
4. This CLR instruction sets to zero the value of the fault code in the `major_fault_record` tag.

- Clear the fault



1. The SSV instruction writes new values to the MAJORFAULTRECORD attribute of this program.
2. The SSV instruction writes the values contained in the *major\_fault\_record* tag. Since the *Type* and *Code* member are set to zero, the fault clears and the controller resumes execution.

## Major Fault Codes

Type:	Code:	Cause:	Recovery Method:
1	1	The controller powered on in Run mode.	Execute the power-loss handler.
1	60	On power-up, a non-recoverable fault occurred which resulted in loss of controller memory integrity. The controller has been reset and memory has been cleared.	Download the program to the controller. Contact Rockwell Automation for help in diagnosing the fault.
1	61	On power-up, a non-recoverable fault occurred which resulted in loss of controller memory integrity. The controller has been reset and memory has been cleared. Extended Diagnostic information was saved.	Download program to the controller. Contact Rockwell Automation for help in diagnosing the fault.
3	16	A required I/O module connection failed.	Check that the I/O module is in the chassis. Check electronic keying requirements. View the controller properties Major Fault tab and the module properties Connection tab for more information about the fault.
3	20	Possible problem with the ControlBus chassis.	Not recoverable - replace the chassis.
3	23	At least one required connection was not established before going to Run mode.	Wait for the controller I/O light to turn green before changing to Run mode.
4	16	Unknown instruction encountered.	Remove the unknown instruction. This probably happened due to a program conversion process.
4	20	Array subscript too big, control structure .POS or .LEN is invalid.	Adjust the value to be within the valid range. Don't exceed the array size or go beyond dimensions defined.
4	21	Control structure .LEN or .POS < 0.	Adjust the value so it is > 0.
4	31	The parameters of the JSR instruction do not match those of the associated SBR or RET instruction.	Pass the appropriate number of parameters. If too many parameters are passed, the extra ones are ignored without any error.

## 9 - 8 System Faults

Type:	Code:	Cause:	Recovery Method:
4	34	A timer instruction has a negative preset or accumulated value.	Fix the program to not load a negative value into timer preset or accumulated value.
4	42	JMP to a label that did not exist or was deleted.	Correct the JMP target or add the missing label.
4	82	A sequential function chart (SFC) called a subroutine and the subroutine tried to jump back to the calling SFC. Occurs when the SFC uses either a JSR or FOR instruction to call the subroutine.	Remove the jump back to the calling SFC.
4	83	The data tested was not inside the required limits.	Modify value to be within limits.
4	84	Stack overflow.	Reduce the subroutine nesting levels or the number of parameters passed.
4	89	In a SFR instruction, the target routine does not contain the target step.	Correct the SFR target or add the missing step.
4	user defined	A user-defined fault.	
6	1	Task watchdog expired. User task has not completed in specified period of time. A program error caused an infinite loop, or the program is too complex to execute as quickly as specified, or a higher priority task is keeping this task from finishing.	Increase the task watchdog, shorten the execution time, make the priority of this task "higher," simplify higher priority tasks, or move some code to another controller.
7	40	Store to nonvolatile memory failed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try again to store the project to nonvolatile memory.</li> <li>2. If the project fails to store to nonvolatile memory, replace the memory board.</li> </ol>
7	41	Load from nonvolatile memory failed due to controller type mismatch.	Update the controller firmware to the with the correct firmware for the controller.



<b>Type:</b>	<b>Code:</b>	<b>Cause:</b>	<b>Recovery Method:</b>
7	42	Load from nonvolatile memory failed because the firmware revision of the project in nonvolatile memory does not match the firmware revision of the controller.	Update the controller firmware to the same revision level as the project that is in nonvolatile memory.
7	43	Load from nonvolatile memory failed due to bad checksum.	Contact Rockwell Automation support. See the back of this publication.
7	44	Failed to restore processor memory.	Contact Rockwell Automation support. See the back of this publication.
8	1	Attempted to place controller in Run mode with keyswitch during download.	Wait for the download to complete and clear fault.
11	1	Actual position has exceeded positive overtravel limit.	Move axis in negative direction until position is within overtravel limit and then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	2	Actual position has exceeded negative overtravel limit.	Move axis in positive direction until position is within overtravel limit and then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	3	Actual position has exceeded position error tolerance.	Move the position within tolerance and then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	4	Encoder channel A, B, or Z connection is broken.	Reconnect the encoder channel then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	5	Encoder noise event detected or the encoder signals are not in quadrature.	Fix encoder cabling then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	6	Drive Fault input was activated.	Clear Drive Fault then execute Motion Axis Fault Reset.
11	7	Synchronous connection incurred a failure.	First execute Motion Axis Fault Reset. If that doesn't work, pull servo module out and plug back in. If all else fails replace servo module.

Type:	Code:	Cause:	Recovery Method:
11	8	Servo module has detected a serious hardware fault.	Replace the module.
11	9	Asynchronous Connection has incurred a failure.	First execute Motion Axis Fault Reset. If that doesn't work, pull servo module out and plug back in. If all else fails replace servo module.
11	32	The motion task has experienced an overlap.	The group's course update rate is too high to maintain correct operation. Clear the group fault tag, raise the group's update rate, and then clear the major fault.

### Minor Faults

If a fault condition occurs that is *not* severe enough for the controller to shut down, the controller generates a **minor fault**.

- The controller continues to execute.
- You do not need to clear a minor fault.
- To optimize execution time and ensure program accuracy, you should monitor and correct minor faults.

To use ladder logic to capture information about a minor fault:

<b>To check for a:</b>	<b>Do this:</b>
periodic task overlap	1. Enter a GSV instructions that gets the FAULTLOG object, MinorFaultBits attribute. 2. Monitor bit 6.
load from nonvolatile memory	1. Enter a GSV instructions that gets the FAULTLOG object, MinorFaultBits attribute. 2. Monitor bit 7.
problem with the serial port	1. Enter a GSV instructions that gets the FAULTLOG object, MinorFaultBits attribute. 2. Monitor bit 9.
low battery	1. Enter a GSV instructions that gets the FAULTLOG object, MinorFaultBits attribute. 2. Monitor bit 10.

To check for a:	Do this:																		
problem with an instruction	1. Create a user-defined data type that stores the fault information. Name the data type <i>FaultRecord</i> and assign the following members:																		
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name:</th> <th>Data Type:</th> <th>Style:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TimeLow</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>Decimal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TimeHigh</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>Decimal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type</td> <td>INT</td> <td>Decimal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Code</td> <td>INT</td> <td>Decimal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Info</td> <td>DINT[8]</td> <td>Hex</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name:	Data Type:	Style:	TimeLow	DINT	Decimal	TimeHigh	DINT	Decimal	Type	INT	Decimal	Code	INT	Decimal	Info	DINT[8]	Hex
Name:	Data Type:	Style:																	
TimeLow	DINT	Decimal																	
TimeHigh	DINT	Decimal																	
Type	INT	Decimal																	
Code	INT	Decimal																	
Info	DINT[8]	Hex																	
	2. Create a tag that will store the values of the MinorFaultRecord attribute. 3. Monitor S:MINOR. 4. If S:MINOR is on, use a GSV instruction to get the values of the MinorFaultRecord attribute. 5. To detect a minor fault that is caused by another instruction, reset S:MINOR. (S:MINOR remains set until the end of the scan.)																		

## Minor Fault Codes

Type:	Code:	Cause:	Recovery Method:
4	4	An arithmetic overflow occurred in an instruction.	Fix program by examining arithmetic operations (order) or adjusting values.
4	7	The GSV/SSV destination tag was too small to hold all of the data.	Fix the destination so it has enough space.
4	35	PID delta time $\leq 0$ .	Adjust the PID delta time so that it is $> 0$ .
4	36	PID setpoint out of range	Adjust the setpoint so that it is within range.
4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>2. In the LEN value, enter the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ol>
4	52	The output string is larger than the destination.	Create a new string data type that is large enough for the output string. Use the new string data type as the data type for the destination.
4	53	The output number is beyond the limits of the destination data type.	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the size of the ASCII value.</li> <li>• Use a larger data type for the destination.</li> </ul>
4	56	The Start or Quantity value is invalid.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the Start value is between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.</li> <li>2. Check that the Start value plus the Quantity value is less than or equal to the DATA size of the Source.</li> </ol>
4	57	The AHL instruction failed to execute because the serial port is set to no handshaking.	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change the Control Line setting of the serial port.</li> <li>• Delete the AHL instruction.</li> </ul>
6	2	Periodic task overlap. Periodic task has not completed before it is time to execute again.	Simplify program(s), or lengthen period, or raise relative priority, etc.

## 9 - 14 System Faults

---

<b>Type:</b>	<b>Code:</b>	<b>Cause:</b>	<b>Recovery Method:</b>
7	49	Project loaded from nonvolatile memory.	
9	0	Unknown error while servicing the serial port.	Contact Technical Support group.
9	1	The CTS line is not correct for the current configuration.	Disconnect and reconnect the serial port cable to the controller. Make sure the cable is wired correctly
9	2	Poll list error. A problem was detected with the DF1 master's poll list, such as specifying more stations than the size of the file, specifying more than 255 stations, trying to index past the end of the list, or polling the broadcast address (STN #255).	Check for the following errors in the poll list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• total number of stations is greater than the space in the poll list tag</li><li>• total number of stations is greater than 255</li><li>• current station pointer is greater than the end of the poll list tag</li><li>• a station number greater than 254 was encountered</li></ul>
9	5	DF1 slave poll timeout. The poll watchdog has timed out for slave. The master has not polled this controller in the specified amount of time.	Determine and correct delay for polling.
9	9	Modem contact was lost. DCD and/or DSR control lines are not being received in proper sequence and/or state.	Correct modem connection to the controller.
10	10	Battery not detected or needs to be replaced.	Install new battery.

## User-Defined Faults

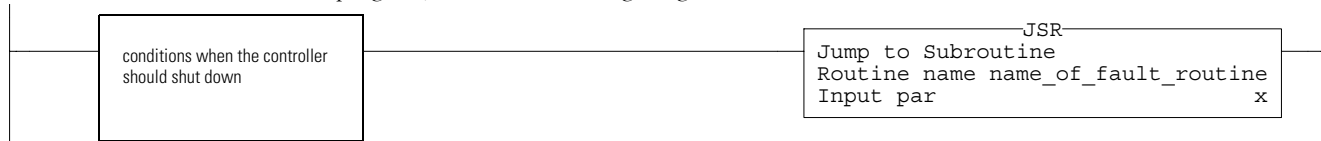
If you want to suspend (shut down) the controller based on conditions in your application, create a user-defined major fault. With a user-defined major fault:

- The fault type is always 4.
- You define a value for the fault code. Make sure it isn't a code that is already used by the predefined major faults.

If you use a fault code that is already a predefined fault code, a major fault occurs.

- The controller handles the fault the same as other major faults:
  - The controller changes to the faulted mode (major fault) and stops executing the logic.
  - Outputs are set to their configured state or value for faulted mode.

In the main routine of the program, enter the following rung:







## Common Structures

The following structures are common structures used by several relay ladder instructions. Function block instructions also use structures, but they are more unique to individual types of instructions.

### COMPARE Structure

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.EN	BOOL	The enable bit indicates that the instruction is enabled.
.DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when the instruction has operated on the last element (.POS = .LEN).
.FD	BOOL	The found bit is set each time the instruction records a mismatch (one-at-a-time operation) or after recording all mismatches (all-per-scan operation).
.IN	BOOL	The inhibit bit indicates the search mode. 0 = all mode 1 = one mismatch at a time mode
.ER	BOOL	The error bit is set if .POS < 0 or .LEN < 0. The instruction stops executing until the program clears the .ER bit.
.LEN	DINT	The length specifies the number of elements in the array.
.POS	DINT	The position contains the position of the current element.

## CONTROL Structure

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.EN	BOOL	The enable bit indicates that the instruction is enabled.
.DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when the instruction has operated on the last element (.POS = .LEN).
.ER	BOOL	The error bit is set if the expression generates an overflow (S:V is set). The instruction stops executing until the program clears the .ER bit. The .POS value contains the position of the element that caused the overflow.
.LEN	DINT	The length specifies the number of elements in the array.
.POS	DINT	The position contains the position of the current element.

## COUNTER Structure

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.CD	BOOL	The count down enable bit indicates that the CTD instruction is enabled.
.CU	BOOL	The count up enable bit indicates that the CTU instruction is enabled.
.DN	BOOL	The done bit indicates that $.ACC \geq .PRE$ .
.OV	BOOL	The overflow bit indicates that the counter exceeded the upper limit of 2,147,483,647. The counter then rolls over to -2,147,483,648 and begins counting up again.
.UN	BOOL	The underflow bit indicates that the counter exceeded the lower limit of -2,147,483,648. The counter then rolls over to 2,147,483,647 and begins counting down again.
.PRE	DINT	The preset value specifies the value which the accumulated value must reach before the instruction sets the .DN bit.
.ACC	DINT	The accumulated value specifies the number of transitions the instruction has counted.

## EXT\_ROUTINE\_CONTROL Structure *(SoftLogix5800 controller only)*

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
ErrorCode	SINT	If an error occurs, this value identifies the error. Valid values are from 0-255.
NumParams	SINT	This value indicates the number of parameters associated with this instruction.
ParameterDefs	EXT_ROUTINE_PARAMETERS[10]	This array contains definitions of the parameters to pass to the external routine. The instruction can pass as many as 10 parameters.

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
ReturnParamDef	EXT_ROUTIN_PARAMETERS	This value contains definitions of the return parameter from the external routine. There is only one return parameter.
EN	BOOL	When set, the enable bit indicates that the JXR instruction is enabled.
ReturnsValue	BOOL	If set, this bit indicates that a return parameter was entered for the instruction. If cleared, this bit indicates that no return parameter was entered for the instruction.
DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when the external routine has executed once to completion.
ER	BOOL	The error bit is set if an error occurs. The instruction stops executing until the program clears the error bit.
FirstScan	BOOL	This bit identifies whether this is the first scan after switching the controller to Run mode. Use FirstScan to initialize the external routine, if needed.
EnableOut	BOOL	Enable output.
EnableIn	BOOL	Enable input.
User1	BOOL	These bits are available for the user. The controller does not initialize these bits.
User0	BOOL	
ScanType1	BOOL	These bits identify the current scan type: <b>Bit Values:</b> <b>Scan Type:</b> 00            Normal 01            Pre Scan 10            Post Scan (not applicable to relay ladder programs)
ScanType0	BOOL	

## MESSAGE Structure

Mnemonic:	Data Type:	Description:																
.FLAGS	INT	The .FLAGS member provides access to the status members (bits) in one, 16-bit word.  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>This bit:</th> <th>Is this member:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>.EW</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>.ER</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>.DN</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>.ST</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>.EN</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>.TO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>.EN_CC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Important:</b> Resetting any MSG status bits while a MSG is enabled can disrupt communications.</p>	This bit:	Is this member:	2	.EW	4	.ER	5	.DN	6	.ST	7	.EN	8	.TO	9	.EN_CC
This bit:	Is this member:																	
2	.EW																	
4	.ER																	
5	.DN																	
6	.ST																	
7	.EN																	
8	.TO																	
9	.EN_CC																	
.ERR	INT	If the .ER bit is set, the error code word identifies error codes for the MSG instruction.																
.EXERR	INT	The extended error code word specifies additional error code information for some error codes.																
.REQ_LEN	INT	The requested length specifies how many words the message instruction will attempt to transfer.																
.DN_LEN	INT	The done length identifies how many words actually transferred.																
.EW	BOOL	The enable waiting bit is set when the controller detects that a message request has entered the queue. The controller resets the.EW bit when the .ST bit is set.																

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.ER	BOOL	The error bit is set when the controller detects that a transfer failed. The .ER bit is reset the next time the rung-condition-in goes from false to true.
.DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when the last packet of the message is successfully transferred. The .DN bit is reset the next time the rung-condition-in goes from false to true.
.ST	BOOL	The start bit is set when the controller begins executing the MSG instruction. The .ST bit is reset when the .DN bit or the .ER bit is set.
.EN	BOOL	The enable bit is set when the rung-condition-in goes true and remains set until either the .DN bit or the .ER bit is set and the rung-condition-in is false. If the rung-condition-in goes false, but the .DN bit and the .ER bit are cleared, the .EN bit remains set.
.TO	BOOL	If you manually set the .TO bit, the controller stops processing the message and sets the .ER bit.
.EN_CC	BOOL	The enable cache bit determines how to manage the MSG connection. Connections for MSG instructions going out the serial port are not cached, even if the .EN_CC bit is set.
.ERR_SRC	SINT	Used by RSLogix 5000 software to show the error path on the Message Configuration dialog box
.DestinationLink	INT	To change the Destination Link of a DH+ or CIP with Source ID message, set this member to the required value.
.DestinationNode	INT	To change the Destination Node of a DH+ or CIP with Source ID message, set this member to the required value.
.SourceLink	INT	To change the Source Link of a DH+ or CIP with Source ID message, set this member to the required value.
.Class	INT	To change the Class parameter of a CIP Generic message, set this member to the required value.
.Attribute	INT	To change the Attribute parameter of a CIP Generic message, set this member to the required value.
.Instance	DINT	To change the Instance parameter of a CIP Generic message, set this member to the required value.

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>						
.LocalIndex	DINT	If you use an asterisk [*] to designate the element number of the local array, the LocalIndex provides the element number. To change the element number, set this member to the required value.						
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><b>If the message:</b></th> <th><b>Then the local array is the:</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>reads data</td> <td>Destination element</td> </tr> <tr> <td>writes data</td> <td>Source element</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>If the message:</b>	<b>Then the local array is the:</b>	reads data	Destination element	writes data	Source element
<b>If the message:</b>	<b>Then the local array is the:</b>							
reads data	Destination element							
writes data	Source element							
.Channel	SINT	To send the message out a different channel of the 1756-DHRIO module, set this member to the required value. Use either the ASCII character A or B.						
.Rack	SINT	To change the rack number for a block transfer message, set this member to the required rack number (octal).						
.Group	SINT	To change the group number for a block transfer message, set this member to the required group number (octal).						
.Slot	SINT	To change the slot number for a block transfer message, set this member to the required slot number.						
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><b>If the network is:</b></th> <th><b>Then specify the slot number in:</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>universal remote I/O</td> <td>octal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ControlNet</td> <td>decimal (0-15)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>If the network is:</b>	<b>Then specify the slot number in:</b>	universal remote I/O	octal	ControlNet	decimal (0-15)
<b>If the network is:</b>	<b>Then specify the slot number in:</b>							
universal remote I/O	octal							
ControlNet	decimal (0-15)							
.Path	STRING	To send the message to a different controller, set this member to the new path. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enter the path as hexadecimal values</li> <li>• omit commas [,]</li> </ul>						

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
.RemoteIndex	DINT	If you use an asterisk [*] to designate the element number of the remote array, the RemoteIndex provides the element number. To change the element number, set this member to the required value.	
		<b>If the message:</b>	<b>Then the remote array is the:</b>
		reads data	Source element
		writes data	Destination element
.RemoteElement	STRING	To specify a different tag or address in the controller to which the message is sent, set this member to the required value. Enter the tag or address as ASCII characters.	
		<b>If the message:</b>	<b>Then the remote array is the:</b>
		reads data	Source element
		writes data	Destination element
.UnconnectedTimeout	DINT	The time out for unconnected messages. The default value is 30 seconds.	
.ConnectionRate	DINT	The ConnectionRate times the TimeoutMultiplier produces the time out for connected messages.	
.TimeoutMultiplier	SINT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the default ConnectionRate is 7.5 seconds</li> <li>• the default TimeoutMultiplier is 4 (which equates to a multiplication factor of 4)</li> <li>• the default time out for connected messages is 30 seconds (7.5 seconds x 4 = 30 seconds)</li> <li>• to change the time out, change the ConnectionRate and leave the TimeoutMultiplier at the default value</li> </ul>	



---

## RESULT Structure

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when the Result array is full.
.LEN	DINT	The length value identifies the number of storage locations in the Result array.
.POS	DINT	The position value identifies the current position in the Result array.

**SERIAL\_PORT\_CONTROL Structure**

<b>Mnemonic:</b>	<b>Data Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
.EN	BOOL	The enable bit indicates that the instruction is enabled.
.EU	BOOL	The queue bit indicates that the instruction entered the ASCII queue.
.DN	BOOL	The done bit indicates when the instruction is done, but it is asynchronous to the logic scan.
.RN	BOOL	The run bit indicates that the instruction is executing.
.EM	BOOL	The empty bit indicates that the instruction is done, but it is synchronous to the logic scan.
.ER	BOOL	The error bit indicates when the instruction fails (errors).
.FD	BOOL	The found bit indicates that the instruction found the termination character or characters.
.POS	DINT	The position determines the number of characters in the buffer, up to and including the first set of termination characters. The instruction only returns this number after it finds the termination character or characters.
.ERROR	DINT	The error contains a hexadecimal value that identifies the cause of an error.

## STRING Structure

Every string data type includes these members:

Name:	Data Type:	Description:	Notes:
LEN	DINT	number of characters in the string	<p>The LEN automatically updates to the new count of characters whenever you:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• use the String Browser dialog box to enter characters</li> <li>• use instructions that read, convert, or manipulate a string</li> </ul> <p>The LEN shows the length of the current string. The DATA member may contain additional, old characters, which are not included in the LEN count.</p>
DATA	SINT array	ASCII characters of the string	To access the characters of the string, address the name of the tag. Each element of the DATA array contains one character. You can create new string data types that store less or more characters.

You store ASCII characters in tags that use a string data type.

- You can use the default STRING data type. It stores up to 82 characters.
- You can create a new string data type that stores less or more characters.

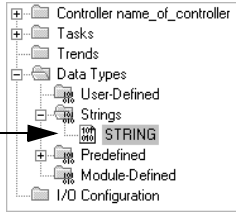
### IMPORTANT

Use caution when you create a new string data type. If you later decide to change the size of the string data type, you may lose data in any tags that currently use that data type.

If you:	Then:
make a string data type smaller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The data is truncated.</li> <li>• The LEN is unchanged.</li> </ul>
make a string data type larger	The data and LEN is reset to zero.

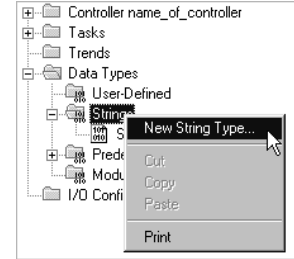
To create a string data type:

Use the default STRING data type. It stores as many as 82 characters.

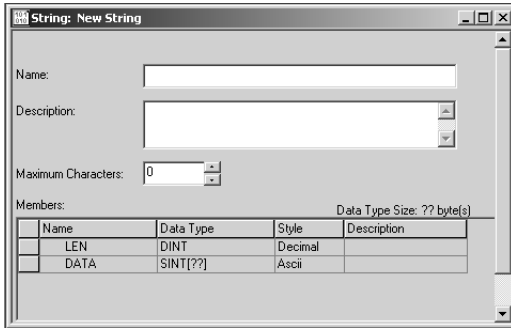


OR

Create a new string data type to store the number of characters that you define.



If you create a new string data type, define the number of characters in the string:



## TIMER Structure

Mnemonic:	Data Type:	Description:
.EN	BOOL	The enable bit indicates that the instruction is enabled.
.TT	BOOL	The timing bit indicates that a timing operation is in process
.DN	BOOL	The done bit is set when $.ACC \geq .PRE$ .
.PRE	DINT	The preset value specifies the value (1 msec units) which the accumulated value must reach before the instruction sets the .DN bit.
.ACC	DINT	The accumulated value specifies the number of milliseconds that have elapsed since the instruction was enabled.

## User-Defined Structure

You can also create your own structures, called a user-defined data type. A user-defined data type groups different types of data into a single named entity.

- Within a user-defined data type, you define the members.
- Like tags, members have a name and data type.
- You can include arrays and structures.
- Once you create a user-defined data type, you can create one or more tags using that data type.
- Minimize the use of these data type because they typically increase the memory requirements and execution time of your logic:
  - INT
  - SINT

- If you include members that represent I/O devices, you must use ladder logic to copy the data between the members in the structure and the corresponding I/O tags.
- When you use the BOOL, SINT, or INT data types, place members that use the same data type in sequence:

**more efficient**

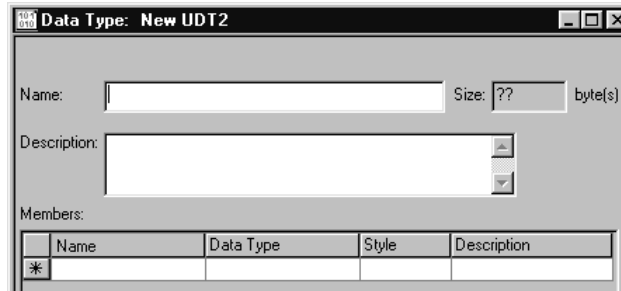
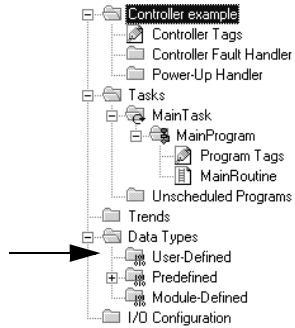
BOOL
BOOL
BOOL
DINT
DINT

**less efficient**

BOOL
DINT
BOOL
DINT
BOOL

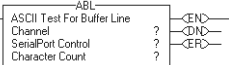
- You can use single dimension arrays.
- You can create, edit, and delete user-defined data types only when programming offline.
- If you modify a user-defined data type and change its size, the existing values of any tags that use the data type are set to zero (0).
- To copy data to a structure, use the COP instruction.

To create a user-defined data type:

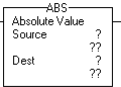
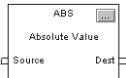


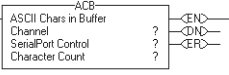
**Notes:**



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ABL</b> <b>ASCII Test for Buffer Line</b>		not available	<pre>ABL (Channel SerialPortControl);</pre>	The ABL instruction counts the characters in the buffer up to and including the first termination character.
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation	
Character Count	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters in the buffer, including the first set of termination characters (relay ladder only)	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

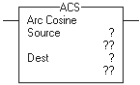
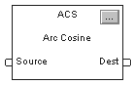
## 11 - 2 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>ABS</b> <b>Absolute Value</b>			<code>dest := ABS(source);</code>	The ABS instruction takes the absolute value of the Source and places the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	value of which to take the absolute value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	ABS tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	ABS structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	Source	REAL	value of which to take the absolute value		
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

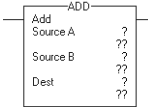

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ACB</b> <b>ASCII</b> <b>Characters in</b> <b>Buffer</b>		not available	ACB (Channel SerialPortControl)	The ACB instruction counts the characters in the buffer.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0
	Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_ CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation
	Character Count	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters in the buffer (relay ladder only)
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 4 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ACL ASCII Clear Buffer</b>		not available	<pre>ACL(Channel, ClearSerialPortRead, ClearSerialPortWrite);</pre>	The ACL instruction immediately clears the buffer and ASCII queue.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	
Clear Serial Port Read	BOOL	immediate tag	to empty the buffer and remove ARD and ARL instructions from the queue, enter Yes.	
Clear Serial Port Write	BOOL	immediate tag	to remove AWA and AWT instructions from the queue, enter Yes.	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ACS</b> <b>Arc Cosine</b>			<code>dest := ACOS(source);</code>	The ACS instruction takes the arc cosine of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag find the arc cosine of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	ACS tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	ACS structure (default parameters):
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		Source	REAL	input to the math instruction
		Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	none		

## 11 - 6 Instruction Set

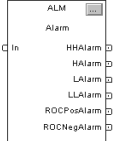
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ADD</b> <b>Add</b>			<code>dest := sourceA + sourceB;</code>	The ADD instruction adds Source A to Source B and places the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag value to add to Source B
	Source B	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag value to add to Source A
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	ADD tag	FBD_MATH	structure	ADD structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	REAL	value to add to SourceB	
SourceB	REAL	value to add to SourceA		
Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>AFI</b> <b>Always False</b>	$\text{--[ AFI ]--}$	not available	not available	The AFI instruction sets its rung-condition-out to false.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none		

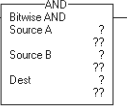

## 11 - 8 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																																																								
<b>AHL</b> <b>ASCII</b> <b>Handshake</b> <b>Lines</b>		not available	AHL (Channel , ANDMask ORMask , SerialPortControl);	The AHL instruction obtains the status of control lines and turns on or off the DTR and RTS signals.																																																								
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>																																																								
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0																																																									
ANDMask	DINT	immediate tag																																																										
ORMask	DINT	immediate tag																																																										
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>To turn DTR:</th> <th>And turn RTS:</th> <th>ANDMask value:</th> <th>ORMask value:</th> <th>To turn DTR:</th> <th>And turn RTS:</th> <th>ANDMask value:</th> <th>ORMask value:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>off</td> <td>off</td> <td>3</td> <td>0</td> <td>unchanged</td> <td>off</td> <td>2</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>on</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td>on</td> <td>0</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>unchanged</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td>unchanged</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>on</td> <td>off</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>on</td> <td>0</td> <td>3</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>unchanged</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	To turn DTR:	And turn RTS:	ANDMask value:	ORMask value:	To turn DTR:	And turn RTS:	ANDMask value:	ORMask value:	off	off	3	0	unchanged	off	2	0		on	1	2		on	0	2		unchanged	1	0		unchanged	0	0	on	off	2	1						on	0	3						unchanged	0	1				
To turn DTR:	And turn RTS:	ANDMask value:	ORMask value:	To turn DTR:	And turn RTS:	ANDMask value:	ORMask value:																																																					
off	off	3	0	unchanged	off	2	0																																																					
	on	1	2		on	0	2																																																					
	unchanged	1	0		unchanged	0	0																																																					
on	off	2	1																																																									
	on	0	3																																																									
	unchanged	0	1																																																									
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation																																																									
Channel Status	DINT	immediate	displays the status of the control lines (relay ladder only)																																																									
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																																																										
affected		Type 4	Code 57	The AHL instruction failed to execute because the serial port is set to no handshaking. Either change the Control Line setting of the serial port or delete the AHL instruction.																																																								



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ALM Alarm</b>	not available		ALM (ALM_tag) ;	The ALM instruction provides alarming for any analog signal.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
ALM tag	ALARM	structure	ALM structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input		
HHAAlarm	BOOL	high-high alarm indicator		
HAlarm	BOOL	high alarm indicator		
LAlarm	BOOL	low alarm indicator		
LLAlarm	BOOL	low-low alarm indicator		
ROCPosAlarm	BOOL	rate-of-change positive alarm indicator		
ROCNegAlarm	BOOL	rate-of-change negative alarm indicator		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

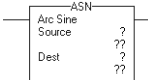
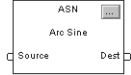
## 11 - 10 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>AND</b> <b>Bitwise AND</b>			<code>dest := sourceA AND sourceB</code>	The AND instruction performs a bitwise AND operation using the bits in Source A and Source B and places the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT DINT	immediate tag	value to AND with Source B
	Source B	SINT DINT	immediate tag	value to AND with Source A
Destination	SINT DINT	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	AND tag	FBD_LOGICAL	structure	AND structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	DINT	value to AND with Source B	
SourceB	DINT	value to AND with Source A		
Dest	DINT	result of the instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected	none			

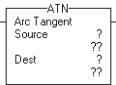
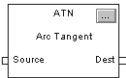
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ARD</b> <b>ASCII Read</b>		not available	<pre>ARD (Channel , Destination , SerialPortControl);</pre>	The ARD instruction removes characters from the buffer and stores them in the Destination.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	
Destination	string SINT DINT INT	tag	tag into which the characters are moved (read): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for a string data type, enter the name of the tag</li> <li>• for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array</li> </ul>	
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation	
Serial Port Control Length	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters to move to the destination (relay ladder only)	
Characters Read	DINT	immediate	during execution, displays the number of characters that were read (relay ladder only)	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 12 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																														
<b>ARL</b> <b>ASCII Read</b> <b>Line</b>		not available	ARL (Channel , Destination, SerialPortControl);	The ARL instruction removes specified characters from the buffer and stores them in the Destination.																														
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Channel</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Destination</td> <td>string SINT    DINT          INT</td> <td>tag</td> <td>tag into which the characters are moved (read): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for a string data type, enter the name of the tag</li> <li>• for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Serial Port Control</td> <td>SERIAL_PORT_ CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>tag that controls the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Serial Port Control Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>displays the maximum number of characters to read if no termination characters are found (relay ladder only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Characters Read</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>during execution, displays the number of characters that were read (relay ladder only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b></td> <td colspan="2"><b>Major Faults:</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">not affected</td> <td colspan="2">none</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	Destination	string SINT    DINT INT	tag	tag into which the characters are moved (read): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for a string data type, enter the name of the tag</li> <li>• for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array</li> </ul>	Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_ CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation	Serial Port Control Length	DINT	immediate	displays the maximum number of characters to read if no termination characters are found (relay ladder only)	Characters Read	DINT	immediate	during execution, displays the number of characters that were read (relay ladder only)	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		not affected		none	
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																															
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0																															
Destination	string SINT    DINT INT	tag	tag into which the characters are moved (read): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for a string data type, enter the name of the tag</li> <li>• for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array</li> </ul>																															
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_ CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation																															
Serial Port Control Length	DINT	immediate	displays the maximum number of characters to read if no termination characters are found (relay ladder only)																															
Characters Read	DINT	immediate	during execution, displays the number of characters that were read (relay ladder only)																															
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																																
not affected		none																																

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>ASN</b> <b>Arc Sine</b>			<code>dest := ASIN(source);</code>	The ASN instruction takes the arc sine of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the arc sine of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	ASN tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	ASN structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
		Source	REAL	input to the math instruction	
		Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

## 11 - 14 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:								
<b>ATN</b> <b>Arc Tangent</b>			<code>dest := ATAN(source);</code>	The ATN instruction takes the arc tangent of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.								
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the arc tangent of this value							
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result							
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	ATN tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	ATN structure (default parameters):								
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>input to the math instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dest</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>result of the math instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	Source	REAL	input to the math instruction	Dest	REAL
Parameter:	Type:	Description:										
Source	REAL	input to the math instruction										
Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction										
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>										
affected		none										

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>AVE</b> <b>Average</b>		not available	<pre> SIZE(array, 0, length); sum := 0; FOR position = 0 TO length-1 DO     sum := sum + array[position]; END_FOR; destination := sum / length;         </pre>	The AVE instruction calculates the average of a set of values.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	SINT DINT REAL	array tag	find the average of the values in this array; specify the first element of the group of elements to average <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Dimension to vary	DINT	immediate (0, 1, 2)	which dimension to use the order is: array[dim_0,dim_1,dim_2] then array[dim_0,dim_1] then array[dim_0]	
Destination	SINT DINT REAL	tag	result of the operation	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements of the array to average	
Position	DINT	immediate	current element in the array; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	Dimension to vary does not exist for the specified array
		Type 4	Code 21	.POS < 0 or .LEN < 0

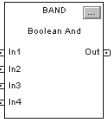
## 11 - 16 Instruction Set


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																							
<b>AWA</b> <b>ASCII Write</b> <b>Append</b>		not available	<pre>AWA (Channel, Source, SerialPortControl);</pre>	The AWA instruction sends a specified number of characters of the Source tag to a serial device and appends either one or two predefined characters.																							
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Channel</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>string SINT INT</td> <td>DINT tag</td> <td>tag that contains the characters to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for a string data type, enter the name of the tag.</li> <li>for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Serial Port Control</td> <td>SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>tag that controls the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Serial Port Control Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>displays the number of characters to send (relay ladder only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Characters Sent</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>displays the number of characters that were sent (relay ladder only)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	Source	string SINT INT	DINT tag	tag that contains the characters to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for a string data type, enter the name of the tag.</li> <li>for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array.</li> </ul>	Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation	Serial Port Control Length	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters to send (relay ladder only)	Characters Sent	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters that were sent (relay ladder only)		
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																								
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0																								
Source	string SINT INT	DINT tag	tag that contains the characters to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for a string data type, enter the name of the tag.</li> <li>for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array.</li> </ul>																								
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation																								
Serial Port Control Length	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters to send (relay ladder only)																								
Characters Sent	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters that were sent (relay ladder only)																								
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																									
not affected		none																									





Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>AWT ASCII Write</b>		not available	<pre>AWT (Channel , Source, SerialPortControl);</pre>	The AWT instruction sends a specified number of characters of the Source tag to a serial device.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Channel	DINT	immediate tag	0	
Source	SINT INT DINT string	tag	tag that contains the characters to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for a string data type, enter the name of the tag</li> <li>• for a SINT, INT, or DINT array, enter the first element of the array</li> </ul>	
Serial Port Control	SERIAL_PORT_CONTROL	tag	tag that controls the operation	
SerialPortControl Length	DINT	immediate	number of characters to send (relay ladder only)	
Characters Sent	DINT	immediate	displays the number of characters that were sent (relay ladder only)	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 18 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>BAND</b> <b>Boolean AND</b>	see AND		<pre>IF operandA AND operandB THEN     &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The BAND instruction logically ANDs as many as 8 boolean inputs.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
BAND tag	FBD_BOOLEAN_AND	structure	BAND structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Inx	BOOL	boolean input; where x = 1-8
			Out	BOOL	result of the instruction
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>BNOT</b> <b>Boolean NOT</b>	see NOT		<pre>IF NOT operand THEN     &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The BNOT instruction complements a boolean input.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
BNOT tag	FBD_BOOLEAN_B NOT	structure	BNOT structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	BOOL	boolean input		
Out	BOOL	result of the instruction		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 20 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>BOR</b> <b>Boolean OR</b>	see OR		<pre>IF operandA OR operandB THEN     &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The BOR instruction logically ORs as many as 8 boolean inputs.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
BOR tag	FBD_BOOLEAN_OR	structure	BOR structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Inx	BOOL	boolean input; where x = 1-8
			Out	BOOL	result of the instruction
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>BRK</b> <b>Break</b>		not available	EXIT;	The BRK instruction interrupts the execution of a routine that was called by a FOR instruction.	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																
<b>BSL</b> <b>Bit Shift Left</b>		not available	not available	The BSL instruction shifts the specified bits within the Array one position left.																
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Array</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>array tag</td> <td>array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>control structure for the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source bit</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>bit to shift</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of bits in the array to shift</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Array	DINT	array tag	array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation	Source bit	BOOL	tag
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																	
Array	DINT	array tag	array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript																	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation																	
Source bit	BOOL	tag	bit to shift																	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of bits in the array to shift																	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																		
not affected		none																		

## 11 - 22 Instruction Set



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																
<b>BSL</b> <b>Bit Shift Right</b>		not available	not available	The BSR instruction shifts the specified bits within the Array one position right.																
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Array</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>array tag</td> <td>array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>control structure for the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source bit</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>bit to shift</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of bits in the array to shift</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Array	DINT	array tag	array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation	Source bit	BOOL	tag
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																	
Array	DINT	array tag	array to modify; specify the first element of the group of elements <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript																	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation																	
Source bit	BOOL	tag	bit to shift																	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of bits in the array to shift																	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																		
not affected		none																		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>BTD</b> <b>Bit Field</b> <b>Distribute</b>		see BTD	see BTD	The BTD instruction copies the specified bits from the Source, shifts the bits to the appropriate position, and writes the bits into the Destination.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT	immediate tag	tag that contains the bits to move
	Source Bit	DINT		immediate	number of the bit (lowest bit number) from where to start the move must be within the valid range for the Source data type (0-31 DINT, 0-15 INT, 0-7 SINT)
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT	immediate tag	tag where to move the bits
	Destination bit	DINT		immediate	the number of the bit (lowest bit number) where to start copying bits from the Source must be within the valid range for the Destination data type (0-31 DINT, 0-15 INT, 0-7 SINT)
	Length	DINT		tag	number of bits to move (1-32)
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected		none			


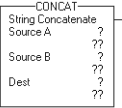
11 - 24 Instruction Set

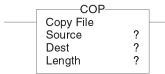
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>BTDT</b> <b>Bit Field</b> <b>Distribute with</b> <b>Target</b>	see BTDT		BTDT (BTDT_tag) ;	The BTDT instruction first copies the Target to the Destination. Then the instruction copies the specified bits from the Source, shifts the bits to the appropriate position, and writes the bits into the Destination. The Target and Source remain unchanged.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
BTDT tag	FBD_BIT_FIELD_DISTRIBUTE	structure	BTDT structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Source	DINT	input value containing the bits to move to Destination
			SourceBit	DINT	the bit position in Source (lowest bit number where to start the move)
			Length	DINT	number of bits to move (1-32)
			DestBit	DINT	the bit position in Dest (lowest bit number to start copying bits into)
			Target	DINT	input value to move to Dest prior to moving bits from the Source
			Dest	DINT	result of the bit move operation
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected		none			



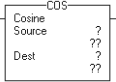
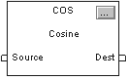
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>BXOR</b> <b>Boolean</b> <b>Exclusive XOR</b>	see XOR		IF operandA XOR operandB THEN <statement>; END_IF;	The BXOR performs an exclusive OR on two boolean inputs.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	BXOR tag	FBD_BOOLEAN_X OR	structure	BXOR structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	In1	BOOL	boolean input	
In2	BOOL	boolean input		
Out	BOOL	result of the instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected	none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CLR</b> <b>Clear</b>		not available	dest := 0;	The CLR instruction clears all the bits of the Destination.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Destination	SINT INT REAL	tag	tag to clear
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected	none			

## 11 - 26 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CMP</b> Compare		not available	IF <i>BOOL_expression</i> THEN <statement>; END_IF;	The CMP instruction performs a comparison on the arithmetic operations you specify in the expression.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Expression	SINT INT DINT REAL string	immediate tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
affected if expressions uses operators that affect arithmetic status flags		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CONCAT</b> String Concatenate		not available	CONCAT (SourceA, SourceB, Dest);	The CONCAT instruction adds ASCII characters to the end of a string.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	string	tag	tag that contains the initial characters
	Source B	string	tag	tag that contains the end characters
Destination	string	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		Type 4	Code 51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag and that in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>COP</b> <b>Copy File</b>		not available	<code>COP (Source, Dest Length);</code>	The COP instruction copies the value(s) in the Source to the Destination. The Source remains unchanged.  The data can change during the copy operation
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT DINT	REAL string structure	tag	initial element to copy the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur
Destination	SINT INT DINT	REAL string structure	tag	initial element to be overwritten by the Source the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur
Length	DINT	immediate tag		number of Destination elements to copy
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 28 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>COS</b> <b>Cosine</b>			<code>dest := COS(source);</code>	The COS instruction takes the cosine of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag find the cosine of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	COS tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	COS structure (default parameters):
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		Source	REAL	input to the math instruction
		Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	none		

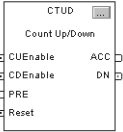
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:		
<b>CPS</b> <b>Synchronous</b> <b>Copy File</b>		not available	CPS (Source, Dest Length) ;	<p>The CPS instruction copies the value(s) in the Source to the Destination. The Source remains unchanged.</p> <p>The data cannot change during the copy operation.</p>		
		Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
		Source	SINT INT DINT	REAL string structure	tag	initial element to copy the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur
		Destination	SINT INT DINT	REAL string structure	tag	initial element to be overwritten by the Source the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur
Length	DINT		immediate tag	number of Destination elements to copy		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:				
not affected		none				

## 11 - 30 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CPT</b> <b>Compute</b>		not available	<pre>destination := numeric_expression;</pre>	The CPT instruction performs the arithmetic operations you define in the expression.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	tag to store the result
Expression	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CTD</b> <b>Counter Down</b>		see CTUD	see CTUD	The CTD instruction counts downward.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Counter	COUNTER	tag	counter structure	
Preset	DINT	immediate	how low to count	
Accum	DINT	immediate	number of times the counter has counted; initial value is typically 0	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CTU</b> <b>Counter Up</b>		see CTUD	see CTUD	The CTU instruction counts upward.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Counter	COUNTER	tag	counter structure	
Preset	DINT	immediate	how high to count	
Accum	DINT	immediate	number of times the counter has counted; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 32 Instruction Set

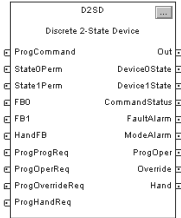
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>CTUD</b> <b>Count</b> <b>Up/Down</b>	see CTU and CTD		CTUD (CTUD_tag) ;	The CTUD instruction counts up by one when CUEnable transitions from clear to set. The instruction counts down by one when CDEnable transitions from clear to set.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
CTUD tag	FBD_COUNTER	structure	CTUD structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
CUEnable	BOOL	enable up count When input toggles from clear to set, accumulator counts up by one.		
CDEnable	BOOL	enable down count When input toggles from clear to set, accumulator counts down by one.		
PRE	DINT	counter preset value		
Reset	BOOL	request to reset the timer		
ACC	DINT	accumulated value		
DN	BOOL	counting done		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**D2SD**  
**Discrete**  
**2-State Device**

not available



D2SD (D2SD\_tag) ;

The D2SD instruction controls a discrete device which has only two possible states such as on/off, open/closed, etc.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
----------	-------	---------	--------------

D2SD tag      DISCRETE\_2STATE      structure      D2SD structure (default parameters):

Parameter:	Type:	Description:
ProgCommand	BOOL	program state command
StateXPerm	BOOL	state x permissive, where x = 0 or 1 unless in Hand or Override mode, this input must be set for the device to enter the state
FBx	BOOL	feedback input, where x = 0 or 1
HandFB	BOOL	hand feedback input when set, the field device is being requested to enter the 1 state; when cleared, the field device is being requested to enter the 0 state
ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request
ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request
ProgOverrideReq	BOOL	program override request

continued

## 11 - 34 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:		Description:
<b>D2SD</b> <b>Discrete</b> <b>2-State Device</b> (continued)			Parameter:	Type:	Description:
			ProgHandReq	BOOL	program hand request
			Out	BOOL	output of the instruction
			DeviceXState	BOOL	device x state output, where x = 0 or 1
			CommandStatus	BOOL	command status output
			FaultAlarm	BOOL	fault alarm output
			ModeAlarm	BOOL	mode alarm output
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator
			Override	BOOL	override mode indicator
		Hand	BOOL	hand mode indicator	
		Arithmetic Status Flags:	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
		not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**D3SD**  
**Discrete**  
**3-State Device**

not available



D3SD (D3SD\_tag) ;

The D3SD instruction controls a discrete device having three possible states such as fast/slow/off, forward/stop/reverse, etc.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:												
D3SD tag	DISCRETE_3STATE	structure	D3SD structure (default parameters):												
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ProgXCommand</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>program state x command, where x = 0, 1, or 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>StateXPerm</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>state x permissive, where x = 0, 1, or 2. unless in Hand or Override mode, this input must be set for the device to enter the state</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FBx</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>feedback input; where x = 0,1, 2, or 3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	ProgXCommand	BOOL	program state x command, where x = 0, 1, or 2	StateXPerm	BOOL	state x permissive, where x = 0, 1, or 2. unless in Hand or Override mode, this input must be set for the device to enter the state	FBx	BOOL	feedback input; where x = 0,1, 2, or 3
Parameter:	Type:	Description:													
ProgXCommand	BOOL	program state x command, where x = 0, 1, or 2													
StateXPerm	BOOL	state x permissive, where x = 0, 1, or 2. unless in Hand or Override mode, this input must be set for the device to enter the state													
FBx	BOOL	feedback input; where x = 0,1, 2, or 3													

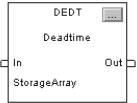
continued

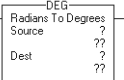

## 11 - 36 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:		Description:
<b>D3SD</b> <b>Discrete</b> <b>3-State Device</b> (continued)			Parameter:	Type:	Description:
			HandFBx	BOOL	hand feedback input, where $x = 0, 1, \text{ or } 2$ when set, the field device is being requested to enter the 1 state; when cleared, the field device is being requested to enter some other state
			ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request
			ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request
			ProgOverrideReq	BOOL	program override request
			ProgHandReq	BOOL	program hand request
			Outx	BOOL	output of the instruction, where $x = 0, 1, \text{ or } 2$
			DeviceXState	BOOL	device $x$ state output, where $x = 0, 1, \text{ or } 2$
			CommandXStatus	BOOL	command status output, where $x = 0, 1, \text{ or } 2$
			FaultAlarm	BOOL	fault alarm output
			ModeAlarm	BOOL	mode alarm output
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator
			Override	BOOL	override mode indicator
		Hand	BOOL	hand mode indicator	
		Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:		
		not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:				
<b>DDT</b> <b>Diagnostic Detect</b>		not available	not available	The DDT instruction compares bits in a Source array with bits in a Reference array to determine changes of state.				
					Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
					Source	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the reference; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
					Reference	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the source; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
					Result	DINT	array tag	array to store the results; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
					Cmp control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the compare
					Length	DINT	immediate	number of bits to compare
					Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the source; initial value typically 0
					Result control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the results
					Length	DINT	immediate	number of storage locations in the result
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the result; initial value typically 0					
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:						
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	Result.POS > size of Result array				

## 11 - 38 Instruction Set


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DEDT</b> <b>Deadtime</b>	not available		DEDT (DEDT_tag, storage) ;	The DEDT instruction performs a delay of a single input. You select the amount of deadtime delay.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
DEDT tag	DEADTIME	structure	DEDT structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
storage	REAL	array	deadtime buffer	
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DEG Degrees</b>			<code>dest := DEG(source);</code>	The DEG instruction converts the Source (in radians) to degrees and stores the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag value to convert to degrees
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	DEG tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	DEG structure (default parameters):
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		Source	REAL	input to the conversion instruction
	Dest	REAL	result of the conversion instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	none		

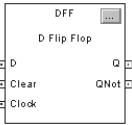
11 - 40 Instruction Set

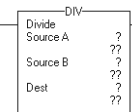
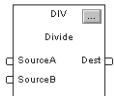
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DELETE</b> <b>String Delete</b>		not available	DELETE (Source, Qty, Start, Dest) ;	The DELETE instruction removes ASCII characters from a string.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	string	tag	tag that contains the string from which you want to delete characters	
Quantity	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	number of characters to delete; the Start plus the Quantity must be less than or equal to the DATA size of the Source
Start	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	position of the first character to delete; enter a number between 1 and the DATA size of the Source
Destination	string	tag	tag	tag to store the result
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		4	56	The Start or Quantity value is invalid. Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the Start value is between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.</li> <li>the Start value plus the Quantity value is less than or equal to the DATA size of the Source.</li> </ul>



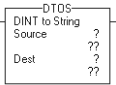
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DERV</b> <b>Derivative</b>	not available		DERV (DERV_tag) ;	The DERV instruction calculates the amount of change of a signal over time in per-second units.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
DERV tag	DERIVATIVE	structure	DERV structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	input to the instruction		
ByPass	BOOL	request to bypass the algorithm; when set, the instruction sets Out = In		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		

## 11 - 42 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DFF</b> <b>D Flip-Flop</b>	not available		<code>DFF (DFF_tag) ;</code>	The DFF instruction sets the Q output to the state of the D input on a cleared to set transition of the Clock input. The QNot output is set to the opposite state of the Q output.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
DFF tag	FLIP_FLOP_D	structure	DFF structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
D	BOOL	input to the instruction		
Clear	BOOL	clear input to the instruction; if set, the instruction clears Q and sets QNot		
Clock	BOOL	Clock input to the instruction		
Q	BOOL	output of the instruction		
QNot	BOOL	complement of the Q output		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
not affected	none			

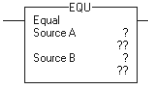
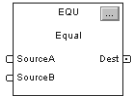
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DIV</b> <b>Divide</b>			<code>dest := sourceA / sourceB;</code>	The DIV instruction divides Source A by Source B and places the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag value of the dividend
	Source B	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag value of the divisor
Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	DIV tag	FBD_MATH	structure	DIV structure (default parameters):
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		SourceA	REAL	value of the dividend
		SourceB	REAL	value of the divisor
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	Type 4	Code 4	the divisor is 0

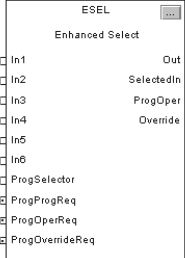
## 11 - 44 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>DTOS</b> <b>DINT to String</b>		not available	DTOS (Source, Dest) ;	The DTOS instruction produces the ASCII representation of a value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT DINT REAL	tag	tag that contains the value; if the Source is a REAL, the instruction converts it to a DINT value	
Destination	string	tag	tag to store the ASCII value	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		4	52	The output string is larger than the destination. Create a new string data type that is large enough for the output string. Use the new string data type as the data type for the destination.

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>DTR</b> Data Transitional		not available	not available	The DTR instruction passes the Source value through a Mask and compares the result with the Reference value.	
		<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		Source	DINT	immediate tag	array to compare to the reference
		Mask	DINT	immediate tag	which bits to block or pass
		Reference	DINT	tag	array to compare to the source
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
EOT End of Transition		not available	EOT(data_bit);	The EOT instruction returns a boolean state to an SFC transition.	
		<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		data bit	BOOL	tag	state of the transition (0=executing, 1=completed)
		<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none			

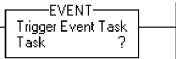
## 11 - 46 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>EQU</b> <b>Equal To</b>			IF sourceA = sourceB THEN <statements>;	The EQU instruction tests whether Source A is equal to Source B.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source B
	Source B	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source A
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	EQU tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	EQU structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB		
	SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA		
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>ESEL Enhanced Select</b>	not available		ESEL (ESEL_tag) ;	<p>The ESEL instruction lets you select one of as many as six inputs. Selection options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• manual select (either by operator or by program)</li> <li>• high select</li> <li>• low select</li> <li>• median select</li> <li>• average (mean) select</li> </ul>
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
ESEL_tag	SELECT_ENHANCED	structure	ESEL structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
Inx	REAL	analog signal inputs to the instruction, where x = 1-6		
ProgSelector	DINT	program selector input		
ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request		
ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request		
ProgOverrideReq	BOOL	program override request		

continued

11 - 48 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:				
<b>ESEL</b> <b>Enhanced Select</b> <b>(continued)</b>			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>			
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm			
			SelectedIn	DINT	number of inputs selected; if the selector mode is average select, the instruction sets SelectedIn = 0			
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator; set when in Program control; cleared when in Operator control			
			Override	BOOL	override mode; set when the instruction is in Override mode			
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>						
set for the Out parameter		none						
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:				
<b>EVENT</b> <b>Trigger Event Task</b>		not available	EVENT (Task) ;	The EVENT instruction triggers one execution of an event task.				
					<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
					Task	na	task name	event task to execute
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>						
not affected		none						



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																														
<b>FAL</b> <b>File Arithmetic and Logic</b>		not available	<pre> SIZE(destination, 0 length-1); FOR position = 0 TO length DO     destination[position] := numeric_expression; END_FOR; </pre>	The FAL instruction performs copy, arithmetic, logic, and function operations on data stored in an array.																														
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>control structure for the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of elements in the array to be manipulated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>current element in array; initial value is typically 0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mode</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>how to distribute the operation; select INC, ALL, or enter a number</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Destination</td> <td>SINT INT REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>tag to store the result</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Expression</td> <td>SINT INT REAL</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation	Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the array to be manipulated	Position	DINT	immediate	current element in array; initial value is typically 0	Mode	DINT	immediate	how to distribute the operation; select INC, ALL, or enter a number	Destination	SINT INT REAL	tag	tag to store the result	Expression	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">affected</td> <td>Type 4      Code 20      subscript is out of range</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4      Code 21      .POS &lt; 0 or .LEN &lt; 0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:	affected
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																															
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation																															
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the array to be manipulated																															
Position	DINT	immediate	current element in array; initial value is typically 0																															
Mode	DINT	immediate	how to distribute the operation; select INC, ALL, or enter a number																															
Destination	SINT INT REAL	tag	tag to store the result																															
Expression	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators																															
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																																	
affected	Type 4      Code 20      subscript is out of range																																	
	Type 4      Code 21      .POS < 0 or .LEN < 0																																	

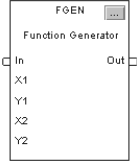
## 11 - 50 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																																											
<b>FBC</b> <b>File Bit</b> <b>Compare</b>		not available	not available	The FBC instruction compares bits in a Source array with bits in a Reference array.																																											
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>array tag</td> <td>array to compare to the reference; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reference</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>array tag</td> <td>array to compare to the source; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Result</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>array tag</td> <td>array to store the result; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscripts</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cmp control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>structure</td> <td>control structure for the compare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of bits to compare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>current position in the source; initial value is typically 0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Result control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>structure</td> <td>control structure for the results</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of storage locations in the result</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>current position in the result initial value is typically 0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Source	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the reference; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	Reference	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the source; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	Result	DINT	array tag	array to store the result; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscripts	Cmp control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the compare	Length	DINT	immediate	number of bits to compare	Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the source; initial value is typically 0	Result control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the results	Length	DINT	immediate	number of storage locations in the result	Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the result initial value is typically 0	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>not affected</td> <td>Type 4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:	not affected	Type 4
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																																												
Source	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the reference; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript																																												
Reference	DINT	array tag	array to compare to the source; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript																																												
Result	DINT	array tag	array to store the result; <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscripts																																												
Cmp control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the compare																																												
Length	DINT	immediate	number of bits to compare																																												
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the source; initial value is typically 0																																												
Result control	CONTROL	structure	control structure for the results																																												
Length	DINT	immediate	number of storage locations in the result																																												
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the result initial value is typically 0																																												
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																																														
not affected	Type 4																																														

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>FFL FIFO Load</b>		not available	not available	The FFL instruction copies the Source value to the FIFO.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT REAL string structure	immediate tag	data to be stored in the FIFO	
FIFO	SINT INT REAL string structure	array tag	FIFO to modify; specify the first element of the FIFO <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the associated FFL	
Length	DINT	immediate	maximum number of elements the FIFO can hold at one time	
Position	DINT	immediate	next location in the FIFO where the instruction loads data; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	(starting element + .POS) > FIFO array size

## 11 - 52 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>FFU FIFO Unload</b>		not available	not available	The FFU instruction unloads the value from position 0 (first position) of the FIFO and stores that value in the Destination. The remaining data in the FIFO shifts down one position.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
FIFO	SINT INT REAL string structure	array tag	FIFO to modify; specify the first element of the FIFO <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Destination	SINT INT REAL string structure	tag	value that exits the FIFO	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the associated FFL	
Length	DINT	immediate	maximum number of elements the FIFO can hold at one time	
Position	DINT	immediate	next location in the FIFO where the instruction unloads data; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
not affected	Type 4	Code 20	Length > FIFO array size	

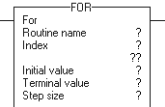
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>FGEN</b> <b>Function Generator</b>	not available		FGEN (FGEN_tag, X1, Y1, X2, Y2) ;	The FGEN instruction converts an input based on a piece-wise linear function.	
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:		
FGEN tag	FUNCTION_GENERATOR	structure	FGEN structure (default parameters):		
			Parameter:	Type:	Description:
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
X1	REAL	array	X-axis array, table one combine with the Y-axis array, table one to define the points of the first piece-wise linear curve		
Y1	REAL	array	Y-axis array, table one combine with the X-axis array, table one to define the points of the first piece-wise linear curve		
X2	REAL	array	(optional) X-axis array, table two combine with the Y-axis array, table two to define the points of the second piece-wise linear curve		
Y2	REAL	array	(optional) Y-axis array, table two combine with the X-axis array, table two to define the points of the second piece-wise linear curve		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter		none			

## 11 - 54 Instruction Set

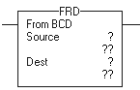
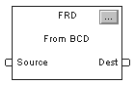
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>FIND</b> <b>Find String</b>		not available	FIND (Source, Search, Start, Result);	The FIND instruction locates the starting position of a specified string within another string
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	string	tag	string to search in	
Search	string	tag	string to find	
Start	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate tag	position in Source to start the search; enter a number between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.
Result	SINT INT	DINT tag	tag	tag that stores the starting position of the string to find
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		4	56	The Start value is invalid. Check that the Start value is between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>FLL</b> <b>File Fill</b>		not available	<pre> SIZE(destination, 0 length); FOR position = 0 TO length-1 DO     destination[position] := source; END_FOR; </pre>	The FLL instruction fills elements of an array with the Source value. The Source remains unchanged.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT REAL	DINT REAL	immediate tag	element to copy the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur
Destination	SINT INT REAL structure	DINT REAL	tag	initial element to be overwritten by the Source the Source and Destination operands should be the same data type, or unexpected results may occur the preferred way to initialize a structure is to use the COP instruction
Length	DINT		immediate	number of elements to fill
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

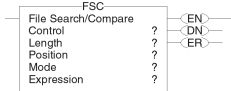
## 11 - 56 Instruction Set

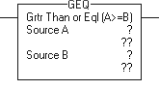
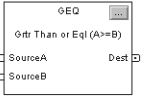
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>FOR</b> <b>For</b>		not available	<pre>FOR count:= <i>initial_value</i> TO <i>final_value</i> BY <i>increment</i> DO   &lt;statement&gt;; END_FOR;</pre>	The FOR instruction executes a routine repeatedly.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Routine name	ROUTINE	routine name	routine to execute	
Index	DINT	tag	counts how many times the routine has been executed	
Initial value	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	value at which to start the index
Terminal value	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	value at which to stop executing the routine
Step size	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	amount to add to the index each time the FOR instruction executes the routine
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	31	main routine contains a RET instruction



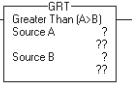

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>FRD Convert to Integer</b>			not available	The FRD instruction converts a BCD value (Source) to an integer value and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate tag	value to convert
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT tag	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	FRD tag	FBD_CONVERT	structure	FRD structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	Source	DINT	input to the conversion instruction.		
	Dest	DINT	result of the math instruction.		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected		none			

## 11 - 58 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																					
<b>FSC</b> <b>File Search and Compare</b>		not available	not available	The FSC instruction compares values in an array, element by element.																					
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Control</td> <td>CONTROL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>control structure for the operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>number of elements in the array to be manipulated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>immediate</td> <td>offset into array; initial value is typically 0</td> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2">Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th colspan="2">Major Faults:</th> </tr> <tr> <td>affected</td> <td></td> <td>4</td> <td>21</td> <td>.POS &lt; 0 or .LEN &lt; 0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation	Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the array to be manipulated	Position	DINT	immediate	offset into array; initial value is typically 0	Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:	
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																						
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation																						
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the array to be manipulated																						
Position	DINT	immediate	offset into array; initial value is typically 0																						
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:																							
affected		4	21	.POS < 0 or .LEN < 0																					

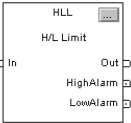
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>GEQ</b> <b>Greater Than or Equal To</b>			IF sourceA >= sourceB THEN <statements>;	The GEQ instruction tests whether Source A is greater than or equal to Source B.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	GEQ tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	GEQ structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB	
	SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA	
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected	none		


11 - 60 Instruction Set

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>GRT</b> <b>Greater Than</b>			IF sourceA > sourceB THEN <statements>;	The GRT instruction tests whether Source A is greater than Source B.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source B
	Source B	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source A
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	GRT tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	GRT structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB		
	SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA		
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																														
<b>GSV</b> <b>Get System Value</b>		not available	GSV (ClassName, InstanceName, AttributeName, Dest);	The GSV instructions get s controller system data that is stored in objects.																														
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Class name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>name of object</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Instance name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>name of specific object, when object requires name</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Attribute Name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>attribute of object; data type depends on the attribute you select</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Destination</td> <td>SINT INT DINT REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>destination for attribute data</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Class name	na	name	name of object	Instance name	na	name	name of specific object, when object requires name	Attribute Name	na	name	attribute of object; data type depends on the attribute you select	Destination	SINT INT DINT REAL	tag	destination for attribute data	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>not affected</td> <td> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 5</td> <td>invalid object address</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 6</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 7</td> <td>the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:	not affected	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 5</td> <td>invalid object address</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 6</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 7</td> <td>the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Type 4	Code 5	invalid object address	Type 4	Code 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul>	Type 4
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																															
Class name	na	name	name of object																															
Instance name	na	name	name of specific object, when object requires name																															
Attribute Name	na	name	attribute of object; data type depends on the attribute you select																															
Destination	SINT INT DINT REAL	tag	destination for attribute data																															
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																																	
not affected	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 5</td> <td>invalid object address</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 6</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Type 4</td> <td>Code 7</td> <td>the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Type 4	Code 5	invalid object address	Type 4	Code 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul>	Type 4	Code 7	the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data																								
Type 4	Code 5	invalid object address																																
Type 4	Code 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul>																																
Type 4	Code 7	the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data																																


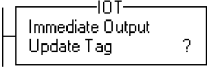
## 11 - 62 Instruction Set



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>HLL</b> <b>High/Low Limit</b>	not available		HLL (HLL_tag) ;	The HLL instruction limits an analog input between two values. You can select high/low, high, or low limits.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
HLL tag	HL_LIMIT	structure	HLL structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
			HighAlarm	BOOL	high alarm indicator; set when $In \geq HighLimit$
			LowAlarm	BOOL	low alarm indicator; set when $In \leq LowLimit$
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>				
set for the Out parameter	none				

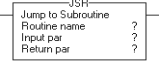

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>HPF</b> <b>High Pass</b> <b>Filter</b>	not available		HPF (HPF_tag) ;	The HPF instruction provides a filter to attenuate input frequencies that are below the cutoff frequency.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
HPF tag	FILTER_HIGH_PASS	structure	HPF structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

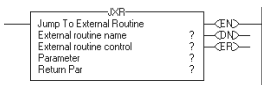

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>INSERT</b> <b>Insert String</b>		not available	INSERT (SourceA, SourceB, Start, Dest) ;	The INSERT instruction adds ASCII characters to a specified location within a string.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source A	string	tag	string to add the characters to	
Source B	string	tag	string containing the characters to add	
Start	SINT INT	DINT tag	position in Source A to add the characters; enter a number between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.	
Result	string	tag	string to store the result	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		4	56	The Start value is invalid. Check that the Start value is between 1 and the DATA size of the Source.




Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>INTG</b> <b>Integrator</b>	not available		INTG (INTG_tag) ;	The INTG instruction implements an integral operation. This instruction is designed to execute in a task where the scan rate remains constant.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
INTG tag	INTEGRATOR	structure	INTG structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>IOT</b> <b>Immediate Output</b>		not available	IOT (output_tag) ;	The IOT instruction immediately updates the specified output data (output tag or produced tag).	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
Output tag	tag name	tag	tag that you want to update, either an output tag of an I/O module or a produced tag <b>do not</b> choose a member or element of a tag		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>JKFF</b> <b>JK FLip-Flop</b>	not available		JKFF (JKFF_tag) ;	The JKFF instruction complements the Q and QNot outputs when the Clock input transitions from cleared to set.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
JKFF tag	FLIP_FLOP_JK	structure	JKFF structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Clear	BOOL	clear input to the instruction; if set, the instruction clears Q and sets QNot
			Clock	BOOL	Clock input to the instruction
			Q	BOOL	output of the instruction
			QNot	BOOL	complement of the Q output
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>JMP</b> <b>Jump</b>		not available	not available	The JMP and LBL instructions skip portions of ladder logic.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
Label name	na	name	name of associated LBL instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		Type 4	Code 42	label does not exist	

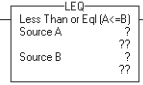
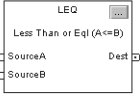
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>JSR</b> <b>Jump to Subroutine</b>			<code>JSR (RoutineName InputCount, InputPar, ReturnPar);</code>	The JSR instruction jumps execution to a different routine.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Routine name	ROUTINE	name	routine to execute	
Input parameter	BOOL SINT INT structure	immediate tag array tag	data from this routine that you want to copy to a tag in the subroutine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>parameters are optional</li> <li>enter multiple parameters, if needed</li> </ul>	
Return parameter	BOOL SINT INT structure	tag array tag	tag in this routine to which you want to copy a result of the subroutine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>parameters are optional</li> <li>enter multiple parameters, if needed</li> </ul>	
Input count	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate	number of input parameters (structured text only)
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected		4	31	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>JSR instruction has fewer input parameters than SBR instruction</li> <li>RET instruction has fewer return parameters than JSR instruction</li> <li>main routine contains a RET instruction</li> </ul>
		4	0	JSR instruction jumps to a fault routine

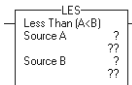
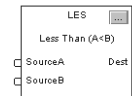
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>JXR</b> Jump to External Routine		not available	not available	The JXR instruction executes an external routine. This instruction is only supported by the SoftLogix5800 controllers.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	External routine name	ROUTINE	name	external routine to execute
	External routine control	EXT_ROUTINE_CONTROL	tag	control structure
	Parameter	BOOL SINT REAL INT structure	immediate tag array tag	data from this routine that you want to copy to a variable in the external routine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>parameters are optional</li> <li>enter multiple parameters, if needed</li> <li>you can have as many as 10 parameters</li> </ul>
	Return parameter	BOOL SINT REAL INT	tag	tag in this routine to which you want to copy a result of the external routine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the return parameter is optional.</li> <li>you can have only one return parameter</li> </ul>
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LBL</b> Label		not available	not available	The JMP and LBL instructions skip portions of ladder logic.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Label name	na	name	execution jumps to LBL instruction with referenced label name
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		Type 4	Code 42	label does not exist

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LDL2</b> <b>Second-Order</b> <b>Lead Lag</b>	not available		LDL2 (LDL2_tag) ;	The LDL2 instruction provides a filter with a pole pair and a zero pair. The frequency and damping of the pole and zero pairs are adjustable. The pole or zero pairs can be either complex (damping less than unity) or real (damping greater than or equal to unity).
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
LDL2 tag	LEAD_LAG_SEC_ORDER	structure	LDL2 structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LDLG</b> <b>Lead Lag</b>	not available		LDLG (LDLG_tag) ;	The LD LG instruction provides a phase lead-lag compensation for an input signal. This instruction is typically used for feedforward PID control or for process simulations.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
LDLG tag	LEAD_LAG	structure	LDLG structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>LEQ</b> <b>Less Than or Equal To</b>			IF sourceA <= sourceB THEN <statements>;	The LEQ instruction tests whether Source A is less than or equal to Source B.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source B
	Source B	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source A
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	LEQ tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	LEQ structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB		
	SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA		
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

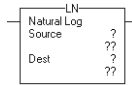

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>LES</b> <b>Less Than</b>			IF sourceA < sourceB THEN <statements>;	The LES instruction tests whether Source A is less than Source B.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source B
	Source B	SINT INT DINT	REAL string	immediate tag	value to test against Source A
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	LES tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	LES structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB		
	SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA		
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

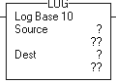
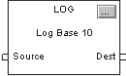


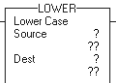

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LFL</b> <b>LIFO Load</b>		not available	not available	The LFL instruction copies the Source value to the LIFO.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT REAL string structure	immediate tag	data to be stored in the LIFO	
LIFO	SINT INT REAL string structure	array tag	LIFO to modify; specify the first element of the LIFO <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the associated LFU	
Length	DINT	immediate	maximum number of elements the LIFO can hold at one time	
Position	DINT	immediate	next location in the LIFO where the instruction loads data; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	(starting element + .POS) > LIFO array size

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LFU</b> <b>LIFO Unload</b>		not available	not available	The LFU instruction unloads the value at .POS of the LIFO and stores 0 in that location.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
LIFO	SINT INT string structure	DINT REAL	array tag	LIFO to modify; specify the first element of the LIFO <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
Destination	SINT INT string structure	DINT REAL	tag	value that exits the LIFO
Control	CONTROL		tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the associated LFL
Length	DINT		immediate	maximum number of elements the LIFO can hold at one time
Position	DINT		immediate	next location in the LIFO where the instruction unloads data; initial value is typically 0
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	Length > LIFO array size

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LIM Limit</b>			<pre>IF (LowLimit &lt;= HighLimit AND   (Test &gt;= LowLimit AND   &lt;= HighLimit)) OR Test &lt;= HighLimit) OR (LowLimit &gt;= HighLimit AND   (Test &lt;= LowLimit OR   Test &gt;= HighLimit)) THEN   &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The LIM instruction tests whether the Test value is within the range of the Low Limit to the High Limit.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Low Limit	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value of lower limit
	Test	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value to test
	High Limit	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value of upper limit
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	LIM tag	FBD_LIMIT	structure	LIM structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	LowLimit	REAL	value of lower limit	
	Test	REAL	value to test against limits	
	HighLimit	REAL	value of upper limit	
	Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:								
<b>LN</b> <b>Natural Log</b>			<code>dest := LN(source);</code>	The LN instruction takes the natural log of the Source and stores the result in the Destination.								
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the natural log of this value							
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result							
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	LN tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	LN structure (default parameters):								
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>input to the math instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dest</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>result of the math instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	Source	REAL	input to the math instruction	Dest	REAL
Parameter:	Type:	Description:										
Source	REAL	input to the math instruction										
Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction										
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>										
affected		none										

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:								
<b>LOG</b> <b>Log Base 10</b>			<code>dest := LOG(source);</code>	The LOG instruction takes the log base 10 of the Source and stores the result in the Destination.								
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag find the log of this value								
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag tag to store the result								
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	LOG tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	LOG structure (default parameters):								
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>input to the math instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dest</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>result of the math instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	Source	REAL	input to the math instruction	Dest	REAL
Parameter:	Type:	Description:										
Source	REAL	input to the math instruction										
Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction										
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>										
affected		none										

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LOWER</b> Lower Case		not available	LOWER (Source, Dest) ;	The LOWER instruction converts the alphabetical characters in a string to lower case characters.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Source	string	tag	tag that contains the characters that you want to convert to lower case	
Destination	string	tag	tag to store the characters in lower case	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>LPF</b> Low Pass Filter	not available		LPF (LPF_tag) ;	The LPF instruction provides a filter to attenuate input frequencies that are above the cutoff frequency.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
LPF tag	FILTER_LOW_PASS	structure	LPF structure (default parameters):	
<b>Parameter:</b>		<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
In		REAL	analog signal input to the instruction	
Out		REAL	calculated output of the algorithm	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
set for the Out parameter		none		

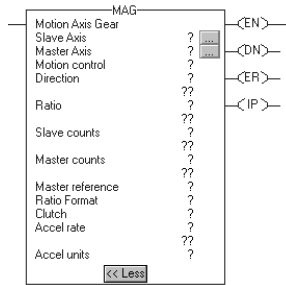
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAAT</b> <b>Motion Apply</b> <b>Axis Tuning</b>		not available	MAAT (Axis, MotionControl);	The MAAT computes a complete set of servo gains and dynamic limits based on the results of a previously run MRAT instruction and updates the motion module with these new gain parameters.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAFR</b> <b>Motion Axis</b> <b>Fault Reset</b>		not available	MAFR (Axis, MotionControl) ;	The MAFR instruction clears all motion faults for an axis. This is the only method for clearing axis motion faults.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MAG  
Motion Axis  
Gear**



not available

```
MAG (SlaveAxis, MasterAxis,
MotionControl, Direction,
Ratio, SlaveCounts,
MasterCounts,
MasterReference,
RatioFormat, Clutch,
AccelRate, AccelUnits);
```

The MAG instruction provides electronic gearing between any two axes in a specified direction and at a specified ratio

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Slave axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Master axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_CONSUME D AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_DRI VE	tag	axis that the slave axis follows
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure

continued

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAG Motion Axis Gear</b> (continued)	Direction	UINT32	immediate tag	relative direction that the Slave axis tracks the Master Axis: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = slave axis moves in the same direction as the master axis</li> <li>• 1 = slave axis moves in the opposite direction of its current direction</li> <li>• 2 = slave axis reverses from current or previous</li> <li>• 3 = slave axis to continue its current or previous direction</li> </ul>
	Ratio	REAL	immediate tag	signed Real value establishing the gear ratio in Slave User Units per Master User Unit
	Slave counts	UINT32	immediate tag	slave counts
	Master counts	UINT32	immediate tag	master counts
	Master reference	BOOL	immediate	master position reference: 0 = actual position, 1 = command position
	Ratio format	BOOL	immediate	ratio format: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = real gear ratio</li> <li>• 1 = integer fraction of slave encoder counts to master encoder counts</li> </ul>
	Clutch	BOOL	immediate	whether Clutch is enabled or disabled
	Accel rate	BOOL	immediate tag	acceleration rate of the Slave Axis in% or Acceleration Units
	Accel units	DINT	immediate	units used to display the Acceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum acceleration
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAH</b> <b>Motion Axis Home</b>		not available	MAH(Axis, MotionControl);	The MAH instruction homes an axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAHD</b> <b>Motion Apply</b> <b>Hookup</b> <b>Diagnostics</b>		not available	<pre>MAHD (Axis, MotionControl, DiagnosticTest, ObservedDirection);</pre>	The MAHD instruction applies the results of a previously run MRHD instruction to generate a new set of encoder and servo polarities based on the observed direction of motion during the test.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Diagnostic test	UDINT	immediate	test for the motion module to run: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = motor/encoder hookup test</li> <li>• 1 = encoder hookup test</li> <li>• 2 = encoder marker test</li> </ul>	
Observed direction	BOOL	immediate	direction of the test motion: 0 = forward; 1 = reverse	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAJ</b> <b>Motion Axis Jog</b>		not available	<pre>MAJ(Axis, MotionControl, Direction, Speed, SpeedUnits, AccelRate, AccelUnits, DecelRate, DecelUnits, Profile, Merge, MergeSpeed);</pre>	The MAJ instruction initiates a jog motion profile for the specified axis.

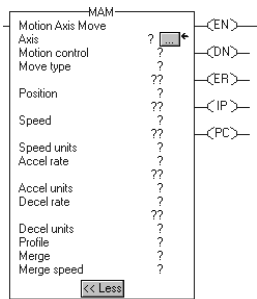
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Direction	UDINT	immediate tag	direction of jog: 0 = forward jog; 1 = reverse jog
Speed	REAL	immediate tag	speed to move the axis in% or Speed Units
Speed units	UDINT	immediate	engineering units for the Speed value: 0 = units per sec; 1 = % of maximum speed

continued

<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>MAJ Motion Axis Jog</b> (continued)	Accel units	UDINT	immediate	engineering units for the Acceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum acceleration
	Accel rate	REAL	immediate tag	acceleration rate of the axis in% or Acceleration Units
	Decel rate	REAL	immediate or tag	deceleration rate of the axis in% or Deceleration Units
	Decel units	UDINT	immediate	engineering units for the Deceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum deceleration
	Profile	UDINT	immediate	select the velocity profile to run the jog: 0 = trapezoidal; 1 = S-curve
	Merge	UDINT	immediate	instructs the motion control to turn all current axis motion
	Merge speed	UDINT	immediate	determines whether the speed is the specified Speed value of this instruction or the Current axis speed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = programmed value in the speed field</li> <li>• 1 = current axis speed</li> </ul>
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MAM  
Motion Axis  
Move**



not available

MAM(Axis, MotionControl, MoveType, Position, Speed, SpeedUnits, AccelRate, AccelUnits, DecelRate, DecelUnits, Profile, Merge, MergeSpeed);

The MAM instruction initiates a move profile for the specified axis.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Move type	UDINT	immediate or tag	type of move operation: 0 = Absolute Move; 1 = Incremental Move; 2 = Rotary Shortest Path Move; 3 = Rotary Positive Move; 4 = Rotary Negative Move; 5 = Absolute Master Offset; 6 = Incremental Master Offset
Position /Distance	REAL	immediate tag	value of the absolute command position to move to, or for incremental movement, the value of the distance to move from the current command position.
Speed	REAL	immediate tag	speed to move the axis in either% or Speed units.

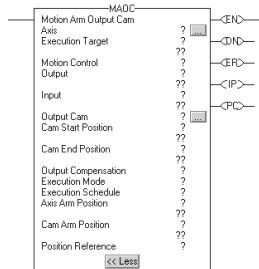
continued

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAM</b> <b>Motion Axis</b> <b>Move</b> (continued)	Speed Units	BOOL	immediate	units for the Speed value: 0 = units per sec; 1 = % of maximum speed
	Accel rate	REAL	immediate or tag	acceleration rate of the axis in% or Acceleration units
	Accel units	BOOL	immediate	units for the Accel value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 = % of maximum acceleration
	Decel rate	REAL	immediate or tag	deceleration rate of the axis in% or Deceleration units
	Decel units	BOOLEAN	immediate	units for the Deceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 = % of maximum acceleration
	Profile	UDINT	immediate	velocity profile to run for the move: 0 = Trapezoidal; 1 = S-curve
	Merge	BOOL	immediate	instructs the motion control to turn all current axis motion, regardless of the motion instructions currently in process, into a pure move governed by this instruction
	Merge speed	DINT	immediate	determines whether the speed of the move profile is going to be the specified Speed value of this instruction or the Current axis speed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = programmed value in the speed field</li> <li>• 1 = current axis speed</li> </ul>
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

### MAOC Motion Arm Output Cam



not available

```
MAOC(Axis, ExecutionTarget,
MotionControl, Output, Input,
OutputCam, CamStartPosition,
CamEndPosition,
OutputCompensation,
ExecutionMode,
ExecutionSchedule,
AxisArmPosition,
CamArmPosition, Reference);
```

The MAOC instruction sets and resets output bits based on an axis position.

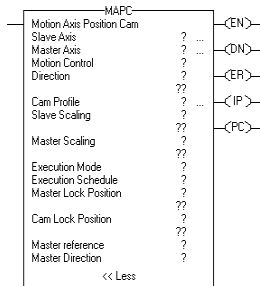
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_CONSUMED AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Execution Target	UNIT32	immediate tag	defines the specific output cam: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0...8 – Output Cams executed in the Logix controller.</li> <li>9...31 – Reserved for future use.</li> </ul>
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure

continued

<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>		<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>MAOC</b> <b>Motion Arm</b> <b>Output Cam</b> (continued)	Output	DINT	tag		32 output bits that are set or reset based on the specified output cam
	Input	DINT	tag		32 input bits that can be used as enable bits depending on the specified output cam
	Output Cam	OUTPUT_CAM		array tag	array of OUTPUT_CAM elements
	Cam Start Position	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	cam start position with the cam end position define the left and right boundaries of the output cam range
	Cam End Position	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	cam end position with the cam start position define the left and right boundaries of the output cam range
	Output Compensation	OUTPUT_COMPENSATION		array tag	array of 1 to 32 OUTPUT_COMPENSATION elements
	Execution Mode	UINT32		immediate	execution mode: once (0); continuous (1); persistent (2)
	Execution Schedule	UINT32		immediate	when to arm the output cam: 0 = immediate; 1 = pending; 2 = forward only; 3 = reverse only; 4 = bi-directional
	Axis Arm Position	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	axis position where the output cam is armed when the execution schedule is set to forward only, reverse only, or bi-directional and the axis moves in the specified direction
	Cam Arm Position	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	cam position associated with the axis arm position when the output cam is armed
	Reference	UINT32		immediate	whether the output cam is connected to either 0 = actual position, 1 = command position
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>			<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected			none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MAPC  
Motion Axis  
Position Cam**



not available

```
MAPC (SlaveAxis, MasterAxis,
MotionControl, Direction,
CamProfile, SlaveScaling,
MasterScaling,
ExecutionMode,
ExecutionSchedule,
MasterLockPosition,
CamLockPosition,
MasterReference,
MasterDirection);
```

The MAPC instruction provides electronic camming between any two axes according to the specified cam profile.

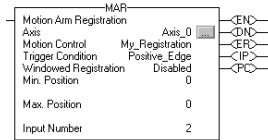
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Slave Axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Master Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_CONSUME AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	axis that the slave axis follows according to the cam profile
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure

continued

<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>MAPC Motion Axis Position Cam</b> (continued)	Direction	UINT32	immediate tag	relative direction of the slave axis: same, opposite, revers, or unchanged
	Cam Profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	calculated cam profile array used to establish the master/slave position relationship
	Slave Scaling	REAL	immediate tag	scales the total distance covered by the slave axis through the cam profile
	Master Scaling	REAL	immediate tag	scales the total distance covered by the master axis through the cam profile
	Execution Mode	UINT32	immediate	determines if the cam profile is executed: 0 = once, 1 = continuous, 2 = persistent
	Execution Schedule	UINT32	immediate	method to execute the cam profile: 0 = immediate, 1 = pending, 2 = forward only, 3 = reverse only, 4 = bi-directional
	Master Lock Position	REAL	immediate tag	master axis absolute position where the slave axis locks to the master axis
	Cam Lock Position	REAL	immediate tag	starting location in the cam profile
	Master Reference	UINT32	immediate	master position reference: 0 = actual position, 1 = command position
	Master Direction	UINT32	immediate	direction of the master axis that generates slave motion according to the cam profile: bi-directional (0), forward only (1), reverse only (2)
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MAR**  
**Motion Arm**  
**Registration**



not available

```
MAR(Axis, MotionControl,
TriggerCondition,
WindowedRegistration,
MinimumPosition,
MaximumPosition,
InputNumber);
```

The MAR instruction arms servo-module registration event-checking for the specified axis.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Trigger condition	BOOL	immediate	registration input transition trigger: 0 = on positive edge, 1 = on negative edge
Windowed registration	BOOL	immediate	whether registration is to be windowed, meaning that the computed registration position must fall within the specified minimum and maximum position limits
Minimum position	REAL	immediate or tag	registration position must be greater than minimum position limit
Maximum position	REAL	immediate or tag	registration position must be less than maximum position limit
Input Number	UINT32	1 or 2	registration input: 1 = Registration 1 Position, 2 = Registration 2 Position

**Arithmetic Status Flags:**

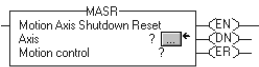
not affected

**Major Faults:**

none

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAS</b> <b>Motion Axis</b> <b>Stop</b>		not available	<pre>MAS (Axis, MotionControl, StopType, ChangeDecel, DecelRate, DecelUnits);</pre>	The MAS instruction initiates a controlled stop of any motion process on the designated axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Stop type	UNIT32	immediate	determines motion process: 0 = stop all motion; 1 = stop jogging; 2 = stop moving; 3 = stop gearing; 4 = stop homing; 5 = stop tuning; 6 = stop test; 7 = stop position camming; 8 = stop time camming; 9 = stop a Master Offset Move	
Change Decel	BOOL	immediate	set to enable use of Decel value rather than the current configured Max Deceleration rate	
Decel rate	REAL	immediate tag	deceleration rate of the axis in% or Deceleration Units	
Decel units	BOOL	immediate	engineering units for Decel value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MASD</b> <b>Motion Axis Shutdown</b>		not available	MASD (Axis, MotionControl) ;	The MASD instruction forces a specified axis into the Shutdown state. The Shutdown state of an axis is when the drive output is disabled, servo loop deactivated, and any available or associated OK solid-state relay contacts are open. The axis remains in the Shutdown state until either an Axis or Group Shutdown Reset is executed.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

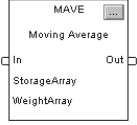
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MASR</b> <b>Motion Axis Shutdown Reset</b>		not available	MASR (Axis, MotionControl) ;	The MASR instruction transitions an axis from an existing Shutdown state to an Axis Ready state.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		



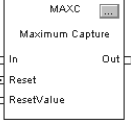
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MATC</b> <b>Motion Axis</b> <b>Time Cam</b>		not available	<pre>MATC (Axis, MotionControl, Direction, CamProfile, DistanceScaling, TimeScaling, ExecutionMode, ExecutionSchedule);</pre>	The MATC instruction provides electronic camming of an axis as a function of time, according to the specified Cam Profile.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion Control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Direction	UINT32	immediate tag	relative direction of the slave axis to the master axis: same, opposite, reverse, unchanged	
Cam Profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	calculated cam profile array	
Distance Scaling	REAL	immediate tag	scales the total distance covered by the axis through the cam profile	

continued

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MATC</b> <b>Motion Axis</b> <b>Time Cam</b> (continued)	Time Scaling	REAL	immediate tag	scales the time interval covered by the cam profile
	Execution Mode	UINT32	immediate	how the cam motion behaves when the time moves beyond the end point of the cam profile: once (0), continuous (1)
	Execution Schedule	UNIT32	immediate	method to execute the cam profile: 0 = immediate, 1 = pending
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>MAVE</b> <b>Moving</b> <b>Average</b>	not available	 <p>The diagram shows a rectangular function block labeled 'MAVE' with a 'Help' icon in the top right corner. Below the title is the text 'Moving Average'. On the left side, there is an 'In' terminal with a square symbol. On the right side, there is an 'Out' terminal with a square symbol. Below the block, there are two labels: 'StorageArray' and 'WeightArray'.</p>	MAVE (MAVE_tag, storage, weight);	The MAVE instruction calculates a time average value for the In signal. This instruction optionally supports user-specified weights.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
MAVE tag	MOVING_AVERAGE	structure	MAVE structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
storage	REAL	array	holds the moving average samples; this array must be at least as large as NumberOfSamples		
weight	REAL	array	(optional) used for weighted averages; this array must be at least as large as NumberOfSamples element [0] is used for the newest sample; element [n] is used for the oldest sample		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			

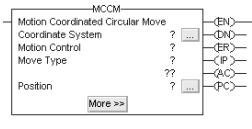
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MAW</b> <b>Motion Arm</b> <b>Watch</b>		not available	MAW(Axis, MotionControl, TriggerCondition, Position);	The MAW instruction arms watch-position event-checking for the specified axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Trigger condition	BOOL	immediate	watch-event trigger condition: 0 = forward; 1 = reverse	
Position	REAL	immediate tag	new value for the watch position	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>MAXC</b> <b>Maximum Capture</b>	not available		MAXC (MAXC_tag) ;	The MAXC instruction finds the maximum of the input signal over time.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
MAXC tag	MAXIMUM_CAPTURE	structure	MAXC structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Reset	BOOL	request to reset control algorithm the instruction sets Out = ResetValue as long as Reset is set
			ResetValue	REAL	reset value for instruction the instruction sets Out = ResetValue as long as Reset is set
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MCCD</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Coordinated</b> <b>Change</b> <b>Dynamics</b>		not available	<pre>MCCD (CoordinateSystem, MotionControl, MotionType, ChangeSpeed, Speed, SpeedUnits);</pre>	The MCCD instruction initiates a change in path dynamics for coordinate motion active on the specified coordinate system
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes	
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Motion Type	SINT DINT INT	immediate	1 = coordinated move	
Change Speed	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	whether to change speed: 0 = no; 1 = yes	
Speed	SINT DINT INT REAL	immediate tag	coordination units	
Speed Units	SINT DINT INT	immediate	0 = units per second; 1 = % of maximum	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MCCM  
Motion  
Coordinated  
Circular Move**



not available

MCCM (CoordinateSystem,  
MotionControl, MotionType,  
Position);

The MCCM instruction initiates a 2- or 3-dimensional circular coordinated move for the specified axes within the coordinate system.

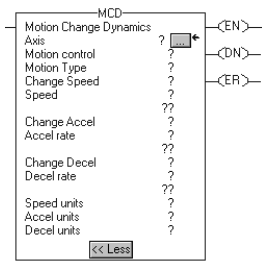
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Motion Type	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	type of move: 0 = absolute; 1 = incremental
Position	REAL	array	coordination units
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																													
<b>MCCP</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Calculate Cam</b> <b>Profile</b>		not available	MCCP (MotionControl, Cam, Length, StartSlope, EndSlope, CamProfile);	The MCCP instruction calculates a cam profile based on an array of cam points.																													
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Motion control</td> <td>MOTION_INSTRUCTION</td> <td>tag</td> <td>motion structure</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cam</td> <td>CAM</td> <td>array</td> <td>cam array</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Length</td> <td>UINT</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>number of cam elements in the array</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start Slope</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>boundary condition for the initial slope of the profile</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End Slope</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>boundary condition for the ending slope of the profile</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cam Profile</td> <td>CAM_PROFILE</td> <td>array</td> <td>calculated cam profile array</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	Cam	CAM	array	cam array	Length	UINT	immediate tag	number of cam elements in the array	Start Slope	REAL	immediate tag	boundary condition for the initial slope of the profile	End Slope	REAL	immediate tag	boundary condition for the ending slope of the profile	Cam Profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	calculated cam profile array	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>not affected</td> <td>none</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																														
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure																														
Cam	CAM	array	cam array																														
Length	UINT	immediate tag	number of cam elements in the array																														
Start Slope	REAL	immediate tag	boundary condition for the initial slope of the profile																														
End Slope	REAL	immediate tag	boundary condition for the ending slope of the profile																														
Cam Profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	calculated cam profile array																														
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																																
not affected	none																																



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MCD**  
**Motion Change**  
**Dynamics**



not available

```
MCD(Axis, MotionControl,
MotionType, ChangeSpeed,
Speed, ChangeAccel,
AccelRate, ChangeDecel,
DecelRate, SpeedUnits,
AccelUnits, DecelUnits);
```

The MCD instruction selectively changes the speed, acceleration rate, or deceleration rate of a move profile or a jog profile in process

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Motion type	UDINT	immediate	motion profile to change: 0 = jog; 1 = move
Change speed	BOOL	immediate	whether to enable a change of speed
Speed	REAL	immediate tag	new Speed to move the axis in% or Speed Units

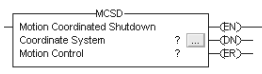
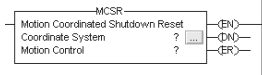
continued

11 - 106

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MCD</b> <b>Motion Change</b> <b>Dynamics</b> (continued)	Change accel	BOOL	immediate	whether to enable an acceleration change
	Accel rate	REAL	immediate tag	acceleration rate of the axis in% or Acceleration units
	Change decel	BOOL	immediate	whether to enable a deceleration change
	Decel rate	REAL	immediate tag	deceleration rate of the axis in% or Deceleration units
	Speed units	BOOL	immediate	units used to display the Speed value: 0 = units per sec; 1 =% of maximum speed
	Accel units	BOOL	immediate	units used to display the Acceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum acceleration
	Decel units	BOOL	immediate	units used to display the Deceleration value: 0 = units per sec <sup>2</sup> ; 1 =% of maximum acceleration
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																		
<b>MCLM</b> Motion Coordinated Linear Move		not available	MCLM (CoordinateSystem, MotionControl, MotionType, Position);	The MCLM instruction initiates a single- or multi-dimensional linear coordinated move for the specified axes within the coordinate system.																		
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Coordinate System</td> <td>COORDINATE_ SYSTEM</td> <td>tag</td> <td>coordinate group of axes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Motion Control</td> <td>MOTION_ INSTRUCTION</td> <td>tag</td> <td>motion structure</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Motion Type</td> <td>SINT DINT INT</td> <td>immediate tag</td> <td>type of move: 0 = absolute; 1 = incremental</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>array</td> <td>coordination units</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes	Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	Motion Type	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	type of move: 0 = absolute; 1 = incremental	Position	REAL	array	coordination units
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																			
Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes																			
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure																			
Motion Type	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	type of move: 0 = absolute; 1 = incremental																			
Position	REAL	array	coordination units																			
		<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>																			
		not affected	none																			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																		
<b>MCR</b> Master Control Reset		not available	not available	The MCR instruction, used in pairs, creates a program zone that can disable all rungs within the MCR instructions.																		
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>not affected</td> <td>none</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:	not affected	none																
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																					
not affected	none																					

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MCS</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Coordinated</b> <b>Stop</b>		not available	MCS (CoordinateSystem, MotionControl, StopType);	The MCS instruction initiates a controlled stop of the coordinated motion profile.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Coordinate System	COORDINATE_SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes	
Motion Control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Stop Type	SINT INT	DINT immediate	type of stop: 2 = coordinated move	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MCS D</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Coordinated</b> <b>Shutdown</b>		not available	MCS D (CoordinateSystem, MotionControl);	The MCS D instruction initiates a controlled shutdown of all axes in the specified coordinate system.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes
	Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MCSR</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Coordinated</b> <b>Shutdown</b> <b>Reset</b>		not available	MCSR (CoordinateSystem, MotionControl);	The MCS D instruction resets all axes in the specified coordinate system.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Coordinate System	COORDINATE_ SYSTEM	tag	coordinate group of axes
	Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																								
<b>MCSV</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Calculate</b> <b>Slave Value</b>		not available	MCSV (MotionControl, CamProfile,MasterValue, SlaveValue,SlopValue, SlopeDerivative	The MCSV instruction calculates the slave value, the slope value, and the derivative of the slope for a given cam profile and master value. As an extension to the position and time camming functionality it supplies the values essential for the recovery from faults during camming operations.																								
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Motion control</td> <td>MOTION_INSTRUCTION</td> <td>tag</td> <td>motion structure</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cam profile</td> <td>CAM_PROFILE</td> <td>array</td> <td>defines the cam profile used in calculating the slave values</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Master value</td> <td>SINT DINT REAL</td> <td>immediate or tag</td> <td>value along the master axis of the cam profile that is used in calculating the slave values</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Slave value</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Slope value</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>first derivative of the value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Slope derivative</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>second derivative of the value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	Cam profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	defines the cam profile used in calculating the slave values	Master value	SINT DINT REAL	immediate or tag	value along the master axis of the cam profile that is used in calculating the slave values	Slave value	REAL	tag	value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value	Slope value	REAL	tag
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																									
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure																									
Cam profile	CAM_PROFILE	array	defines the cam profile used in calculating the slave values																									
Master value	SINT DINT REAL	immediate or tag	value along the master axis of the cam profile that is used in calculating the slave values																									
Slave value	REAL	tag	value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value																									
Slope value	REAL	tag	first derivative of the value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value																									
Slope derivative	REAL	tag	second derivative of the value along the slave axis of the cam profile with the master at the specified master value																									
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected		<b>Major Faults:</b> none																										

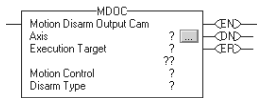
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MDF</b> <b>Motion Direct Drive Off</b>		not available	MDF (Axis, MotionControl);	The MDF instruction deactivates the servo drive and sets the servo output voltage to the output offset voltage.
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_SERVO	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MDO</b> <b>Motion Direct Drive On</b>		not available	<pre>MDO(Axis, MotionControl, DriveOutput, DriveUnits);</pre>	The MDO instruction works in conjunction with motion modules that support an external analog servo drive interface. The MDO instruction activates the module's Drive Enable, enabling the external servo drive, and also sets the servo module's output voltage of the drive to the specified voltage level.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_SERVO	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Drive Output	REAL	tag	voltage to output in% of servo output limit or in volts	
Drive Units	BOOL	tag	units for drive output value: 0 = volts, 1 = %	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**MDOC**  
**Motion Disarm**  
**Output Cam**



not available

MDOC(Axis, ExecutionTarget, MotionControl, DisarmType);

The MDOC instruction initiates the disarming of one or more output cams connected to the specified axis.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_CONSUME AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
Execution Target	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	output cam from the set connected to the named axis: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0..8 – Output Cams executed in the Logix controller.</li> <li>• 9..31 – Reserved for future use.</li> </ul>
Motion Control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Disarm Type	DINT	immediate	output cam(s) to be disarmed: 0 = all, 1 = specific
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MDR</b> <b>Motion Disarm</b> <b>Registration</b>		not available	MDR(Axis, MotionControl, InputNumber);	The MDR instruction disarms the registration input event-checking for the specified axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Input Number	UINT32	1 or 2	registration input: 1 = Registration 1 Position, 2 = Registration 2 Position	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MDW</b> <b>Motion Disarm</b> <b>Watch</b>		not available	MDW(Axis, MotionControl);	The MDW instruction disarms watch-position event-checking for an axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MEQ Masked Equal To</b>			<pre>IF (Source AND Mask) = (Compare AND Mask) THEN   &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The MEQ instruction passes the Source and Compare values through a Mask and compares the results.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate value to test against Compare
	Mask	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate defines which bits to block or pass
	Compare	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate value to test against Source
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	MEQ tag	FBD_MASK_ EQUAL	structure	MEQ structure (default parameters):
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		Source	DINT	value to test against Compare
		Mask	DINT	defines which bits to block (mask)
		Compare	DINT	compare value
		Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MGS</b> <b>Motion Group Stop</b>		not available	MGS (Group, MotionControl, StopMode);	The MGS instruction initiates a stop of all motion in progress on all axes in the specified group by a method configured individually for each axis or as a group via the stop mode of the MGS instruction.


Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Group	MOTION_GROUP	tag	group of axes
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
Stop Mode	UDINT	immediate	how the axes in the group are stopped: 0 = programmed, 1 = fast stop, 2 = fast disable
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MGSD</b> <b>Motion Group Shutdown</b>		not available	MGSD (Group, MotionControl);	The MGSD instruction forces all axes in the designated group into a Shutdown state.

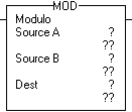

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
Group	MOTION_GROUP	tag	group of axes
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none	

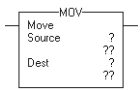
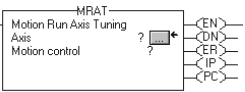
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MGSP</b> Motion Group Stroke Position		not available	MGSP (Group, MotionControl) ;	The MGSP instruction latches the current command and actual position of all axes in the specified group at a single point in time.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Group	MOTION_GROUP	tag	group of axes	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MGSR</b> Motion Group Shutdown Reset		not available	MGSR (Group, MotionControl) ;	The MGSR instruction transitions a group of axes from the shutdown operating state to the axis ready operating state.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Group	MOTION_GROUP	tag	group of axes	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MID</b> <b>Middle String</b>		not available	MID (Source, Qty, Start, Dest) ;	The MID instruction copies a specified number of ASCII characters from a string and stores them in another string.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	string	tag	string to copy characters from	
Quantity	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	number of characters to copy; the Start plus the Quantity must be less than or equal to the DATA size of the Source
Start	SINT INT	DINT tag	immediate	position of the first character to copy; enter a number between 1 and the DATA size of the Source
Destination	string	tag	string to copy the characters to	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains</li> </ul>
		Type 4	Code 56	The Start or Quantity value is invalid. Check that the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start value is between 1 and the DATA size of the Source</li> <li>Start value plus the Quantity value is less than or equal to the DATA size of the Source</li> </ul>

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MINC</b> <b>Minimum</b> <b>Capture</b>	not available		MINC (MINC_tag) ;	The MINC instruction finds the minimum of the Input signal over time.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
MINC tag	MINIMUM_ CAPTURE	structure	MINC structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Reset	BOOL	request to reset control algorithm the instruction sets Out = ResetValue as long as Reset is set		
ResetValue	REAL	reset value for instruction the instruction sets Out = ResetValue as long as Reset is set.		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MOD</b> <b>Modulo</b>			<code>dest := sourceA MOD sourceB;</code>	The MOD instruction divides Source A by Source B and places the remainder in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value of the dividend
	Source B	SINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value of the divisor
Destination	SINT INT REAL	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	MOD tag	FBD_MATH	structure	MOD structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	REAL	value of the dividend	
	SourceB	REAL	value of the divisor	
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected	Type 4	Code 4	the divisor is 0	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MOV</b> <b>Move</b>		not available	<code>dest := source;</code>	The MOV instruction copies the Source to the Destination. The Source remains unchanged.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT DINT INT REAL	immediate tag	value to move (copy)	
Destination	SINT DINT INT REAL	tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MRAT</b> <b>Motion Run</b> <b>Axis Tuning</b>		not available	<code>MRAT(Axis, MotionControl);</code>	The MRAT instruction commands the motion module to run a tuning profile for the specified axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MRHD</b> <b>Motion Run Hookup Diagnostics</b>		not available	MRHD (Axis, MotionControl, DiagnosticTest);	The MRHD instruction commands the motion module to run any one of three different diagnostics on the specified axis.
	Axis	AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis
	Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure
	Diagnostic test	DINT	immediate	test for the motion module to run: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = motor/encoder hookup test</li> <li>• 1 = encoder hookup test</li> <li>• 2 = encoder marker test</li> </ul>
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

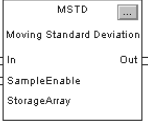
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MRP</b> <b>Motion</b> <b>Redefine</b> <b>Position</b>		not available	MRP(Axis, MotionControl, Type, PositionSelect, Position);	The MRP instruction changes the command or actual position of an axis.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_FEEDBACK AXIS_VIRTUAL AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Type	BOOL	immediate	how the redefinition operation should work: 0 = absolute, 1 = relative	
Position select	BOOL	immediate	what position to perform the redefinition operation on: 0 = actual position, 1 = command position	
Position	REAL	immediate tag	value to use to change the axis position to or offset to current position	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

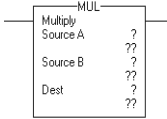
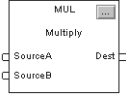
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MSF</b> <b>Motion Servo Off</b>		not available	MSF (Axis, MotionControl);	<p>The MSF instruction deactivates the drive output for the specified axis and to deactivate the axis' servo loop.</p> <p>If you execute an MSF instruction while the axis is moving, the axis coasts to an uncontrolled stop.</p>
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO_ AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_ INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MSG</b> <b>Message</b>		not available	MSG (MessageControl);	The MSG instruction asynchronously reads or writes a block of data to another module on a network.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
message control	MESSAGE	tag	message structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

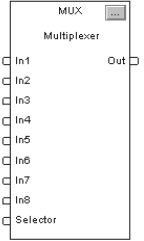
11 - 126

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MSO</b> <b>Motion Servo</b> <b>On</b>		not available	<code>MSO(Axis, MotionControl);</code>	The MSO instruction activates the drive amplifier for the specified axis and to activate the axis' servo control loop.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Axis	AXIS_GENERIC AXIS_SERVO AXIS_SERVO_ DRIVE	tag	name of the axis	
Motion control	MOTION_INSTRUCTION	tag	motion structure	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																											
<b>MSTD</b> <b>Moving Standard Deviation</b>	not available		MSTD (MSTD_tag, storage) ;	The MSTD instruction calculates a moving standard deviation and average for the In signal.																											
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MSTD tag</td> <td>MOVING_STD_DEV</td> <td>structure</td> <td>MSTD structure (default parameters):</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4"> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SampleEnable</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>calculated output of the algorithm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>storage</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>array</td> <td>holds the In samples; this array must be at least as large as NumberOfSamples</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	MSTD tag	MOVING_STD_DEV	structure	MSTD structure (default parameters):	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SampleEnable</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>calculated output of the algorithm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Parameter:	Type:	Description:	In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction	SampleEnable	BOOL	enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.	Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm	storage	REAL	array	holds the In samples; this array must be at least as large as NumberOfSamples		
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																												
MSTD tag	MOVING_STD_DEV	structure	MSTD structure (default parameters):																												
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SampleEnable</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>calculated output of the algorithm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Parameter:	Type:	Description:	In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction	SampleEnable	BOOL	enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.	Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm																
Parameter:	Type:	Description:																													
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction																													
SampleEnable	BOOL	enable for taking a sample of In When set, the instruction enters the value of In into the storage array and calculates a new Out and Average value. When cleared and Initialize is cleared, the instruction holds Out and Average at their current values.																													
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm																													
storage	REAL	array	holds the In samples; this array must be at least as large as NumberOfSamples																												
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																													
set for the Out parameter		none																													

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MUL</b> <b>Multiply</b>			<code>dest := sourceA * sourceB;</code>	The MUL instruction multiplies Source A with Source B and places the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT	DINT REAL immediate tag	value of the multiplicand
	Source B	SINT INT	DINT REAL immediate tag	value of the multiplier
Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	MUL tag	FBD_MATH	structure	MUL structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	REAL	value of the multiplicand	
	SourceB	REAL	value of the multiplier	
Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected		none		

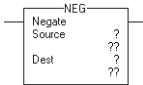
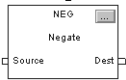


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MUX</b> Multiplexer	not available		not available	The MUX instruction selects one of eight inputs based on the selector input.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
MUX tag	MULTIPLEXER	structure	MUX structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In $x$	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction where $x = 1-8$		
Selector	DINT	selector input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	selected output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>MVM</b> <b>Masked Move</b>		see MVMT	<pre>dest := (Dest AND NOT (Mask) ) OR (Source AND Mask) ;</pre>	The MVM instruction copies the Source to a Destination and allows portions of the data to be masked.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT DINT	immediate tag	value to move	
Mask	SINT DINT	immediate tag	which bits to block or pass	
Destination	SINT DINT	tag	an expression consisting of tags and/or immediate values separated by operators	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		none		


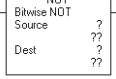

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>MVMT Masked Move with Target</b>	see MVM		MVMT (MVMT_tag) ;	The MVMT instruction first copies the Target to the Destination. Then the instruction compares the masked Source to the Destination and makes any required changes to the Destination. The Target and the Source remain unchanged.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
MVMT tag	FBD_MASKED_MOVE	structure	MVMT structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Source	DINT	input value to move to Destination based on value of Mask
			Mask	DINT	mask of bits to move from Source to Dest. All bits set to one cause the corresponding bits to move from Source to Dest. All bits that are set to zero cause the corresponding bits not to move from Source to Dest
			Target	DINT	input value to move to Dest prior to moving Source bits through the Mask
			Dest	DINT	result of masked move instruction
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>				
affected	none				


11 - 132

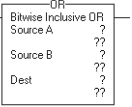

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>NEG</b> <b>Negate</b>			<code>dest := -source;</code>	The NEG instruction changes the sign of the Source and places the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	value to negate
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	NEG tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	NEG structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
		Source	REAL	value to negate	
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>NEQ</b> <b>Not Equal To</b>			IF sourceA <> sourceB THEN <statements>;	The NEQ instruction tests whether Source A is not equal to Source B.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT DINT	REAL string tag	immediate tag	value to test against Source B
	Source B	SINT INT DINT	REAL string tag	immediate tag	value to test against Source A
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	NEQ tag	FBD_COMPARE	structure	NEQ structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
		SourceA	REAL	value to test against SourceB	
		SourceB	REAL	value to test against SourceA	
		Dest	BOOL	result of the instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

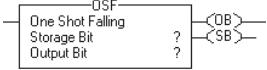

## 11 - 134



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>NOP</b> No Operation		not available	not available	The NOP instruction functions as a placeholder	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>NOT</b> Bitwise NOT			<code>dest := NOT source</code>	The NOT instruction performs a bitwise NOT operation using the bits in the Source and places the result in the Destination.	
	<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	value to NOT	
	Destination	SINT DINT INT	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	NOT tag	FBD_LOGICAL	structure	NOT structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	Source	DINT	value to NOT		
	Dest	DINT	result of the instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none			




Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>NTCH</b> Notch Filter	not available		<code>NTCH (NTCH_tag) ;</code>	The NTCH instruction provides a filter to attenuate input frequencies that are at the notch frequency.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	NTCH tag	FILTER_NOTCH	structure	NTCH structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm			
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>ONS</b> One Shot	<code>—[ONS]—</code>	not available	<pre>IF <i>BOOL_expression</i> AND NOT storage_bit THEN     &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF; storage_bit := <i>BOOL_expression</i>;</pre>	The ONS instruction enables or disables the remainder of the rung, depending on the status of the storage bit.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	storage bit	BOOL	tag	internal storage bit stores the rung-condition-in from the last time the instruction was executed	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected		none		

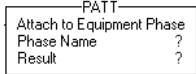
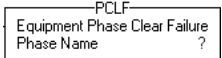
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>OR</b> <b>Bitwise OR</b>			<code>dest := sourceA OR sourceB</code>	The OR instruction performs a bitwise OR operation using the bits in Source A and Source B and places the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT DINT	immediate tag	value to OR with Source B
	Source B	SINT DINT	immediate tag	value to OR with Source A
Destination	SINT DINT	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	OR tag	FBD_LOGICAL	structure	OR structure (default parameters):
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SourceA	DINT	value to OR with Source B	
	SourceB	DINT	value to OR with Source A	
	Dest	DINT	result of the instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	none		

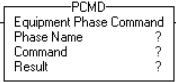
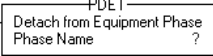


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>OSF</b> <b>One Shot Falling</b>		see OSFI	see OSFI	The OSF instruction sets or clears the output bit depending on the status of the storage bit.	
		<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		storage bit	BOOL	tag	internal storage bit stores the rung-condition-in from the last time the instruction was executed
		output bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be set
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>OSFI</b> <b>One Shot Falling with Input</b>	see OSF		OSFI (OSFI_tag);	The OSFI instruction sets the OutputBit for one execution cycle when the InputBit toggles from set to cleared.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	OSFI tag	FBD_ONESHOT	structure	OSFI structure (default parameters):	
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
		InputBit	BOOL	input bit	
		OutputBit	BOOL	output bit	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>OSR One Shot Rising</b>		see OSRI	see OSRI	The OSR instruction sets or clears the output bit, depending on the status of the storage bit.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
storage bit	BOOL	tag	internal storage bit stores the rung-condition-in from the last time the instruction was executed	
output bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be set	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>OSRI One Shot Rising with Input</b>	see OSR		OSRI (OSRI_tag);	The OSRI instruction sets the output bit for one execution cycle when the input bit toggles from cleared to set.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
OSRI tag	FBD_ONESHOT	structure	OSRI structure (default parameters):	
<b>Parameter:</b>		<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
InputBit		BOOL	input bit	
OutputBit		BOOL	output bit	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>OTE</b> Output Energize		not available	<code>data_bit [:=] BOOL_expression;</code>	The OTE instruction sets or clears the data bit.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	data bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be set or cleared
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none		
<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>OTL</b> Output Latch		not available	<code>IF BOOL_expression THEN data_bit := 1; END_IF;</code>	The OTL instruction sets (latches) the data bit.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	data bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be set
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none		
<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>OTU</b> Output Unlatch		not available	<code>IF BOOL_expression THEN data_bit := 0; END_IF;</code>	The OTU instruction clears (unlatches) the data bit.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	data bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be cleared
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
not affected		none		

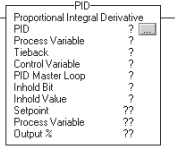
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PATT Attach to Equipment Phase</b>		not available	PATT (Phase_Name, Result) ;	The PATT instruction lets a program take ownership of an equipment phase.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Phase Name	phase	name of the equipment phase	Equipment phase that you want to own
	Result	DINT	immediate tag	To let the instruction return a code for its success/failure, enter a DINT tag in which to store the result code. Otherwise, enter 0.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PCLF Equipment Phase Clear Failure</b>		not available	PCLF (Phase_Name) ;	The PCLF instruction clears the failure code for an equipment phase.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Phase Name	phase	name of the equipment phase	Equipment phase that you <i>no longer</i> want to own
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PCMD Equipment Phase Command</b>		not available	PCMD (PhaseName, Command, Result);	The PCMD instruction transitions an equipment phase to the next state or substate.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Phase Name	phase	name of the equipment phase	Equipment phase that you want to change to a different state or substate
	Command	command	name of the command	Command that you want to send to the equipment phase to change its state
	Result	DINT	immediate tag	To let the instruction return a code for its success/failure, enter a DINT tag in which to store the result code. Otherwise, enter 0.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PDET Detach from Equipment Phase</b>		not available	PDET (Phase_Name);	After a program executes a PDET instruction, the program no longer owns the equipment phase. This frees the equipment phase for ownership by another program or by RSBizWare Batch software. Use the PDET instruction only if the program previously took ownership of an equipment phase via an Attach to Equipment Phase (PATT) instruction.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Phase Name	phase	name of the equipment phase	Equipment phase that you <i>no longer</i> want to own
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	

11 - 142

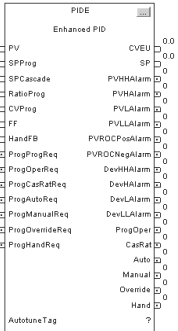
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PFL Equipment Phase Failure</b>		not available	PFL(Failure_Code) ;	The PFL instruction sets the value of the failure code for an equipment phase. Use the instruction to signal a specific failure for an equipment phase, such as a specific device has faulted.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Failure_Code	DINT	immediate tag	value to which you want to set the failure code for the equipment phase
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>PI Proportional + Integral</b>	not available		PI (PI_tag) ;	The PI instruction provides two methods of operation. The first method follows the conventional PI algorithm in that the proportional and integral gains remain constant over the range of the input signal (error). The second method uses a non-linear algorithm where the proportional and integral gains vary over the range of the input signal. The input signal is the deviation between the setpoint and feedback of the process.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
PI tag	PROP_INT	structure	PI structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	process error signal input
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the PI algorithm
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PID Proportional, Integral, Derivative</b>		not available	PID (PID, ProcessVariable, Tieback, ControlVariable, PIDMasterLoop, InholdBit, InholdValue);	The PID instruction controls a process variable such as flow, pressure, temperature, or level.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
PID	PID	structure	PID structure	
Process variable	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	value you want to control
Tieback	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	<i>(optional)</i> output of a hardware hand/auto station which is bypassing the output of the controller Enter 0 if you don't want to use this parameter.
Control variable	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	value which goes to the final control device (valve, damper, etc.) If you are using the deadband, the Control variable must be REAL or it will be forced to 0 when the error is within the deadband.
PID master loop	PID	structure	<i>(optional)</i> PID tag for the master PID Enter 0 if you don't want to use this parameter.	
Inhold bit	BOOL	tag	<i>(optional)</i> current status of the inhold bit from a 1756 analog output channel to support bumpless restart Enter 0 if you don't want to use this parameter.	
Inhold value	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	<i>(optional)</i> data readback value from a 1756 analog output channel to support bumpless restart Enter 0 if you don't want to use this parameter.

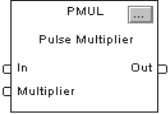


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PID Proportional, Integral, Derivative (continued)</b>	Setpoint	na	na	displays current value of the setpoint
	Process variable	na	na	displays current value of the scaled process variable
	Output %	na	na	displays current output percentage value
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected	Type 4		Code 35	.UPD =0
	Type 4		Code 36	setpoint out of range

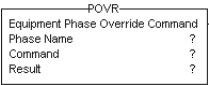

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PIDE</b> <b>Enhanced PID</b>	not available		PIDE (PIDE_tag) ;	The PIDE instruction provides enhanced capabilities over the standard PID instruction. The instruction uses the velocity form of the PID algorithm. The gain terms are applied to the change in the value of error or PV, not the value of error or PV.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
PIDE tag	PIDE_ENHANCED	structure	PIDE structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
PV	REAL	scaled process variable input		
SPProg	REAL	SP program value, scaled in PV units		
SPCascade	REAL	SP Cascade value, scaled in PV units		
RatioProg	REAL	ratio program multiplier.		
CVProg	REAL	CV program manual value		



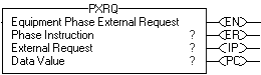
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:		Description:
<b>PIDE Enhanced PID (continued)</b>			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			FF	REAL	feed forward value
			HandFB	REAL	CV hand feedback value
			ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request
			ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request
			ProgCasRatReq	BOOL	program cascade/ratio mode request
			ProgAutoReq	BOOL	program auto mode request
			ProgManualReq	BOOL	program manual mode request
			ProgOverrideReq	BOOL	program override mode request
			ProgHandReq	BOOL	program hand mode request
			CVEU	REAL	scaled control variable output
			SP	REAL	current setpoint value
			PVHHAAlarm	BOOL	PV high-high alarm indicator
			PVHAlarm	BOOL	PV high alarm indicator
			PVLAlarm	BOOL	PV low alarm indicator
			PVLAlarm	BOOL	PV low-low alarm indicator
PVROCPosAlarm	BOOL	PV rate-of-change positive alarm indicator			
PVROCNegAlarm	BOOL	PV rate-of-change negative alarm indicator			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>PIDE Enhanced PID (continued)</b>			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			DevHHAlarm	BOOL	deviation high-high alarm indicator
			DevHAlarm	BOOL	deviation high alarm indicator
			DevLAlarm	BOOL	deviation low alarm indicator
			DevLLAlarm	BOOL	deviation low-low alarm indicator
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator set when in program mode; cleared when in operator mode
			CasRat	BOOL	cascade ration mode indicator
			Auto	BOOL	auto mode indicator
			Manual	BOOL	manual mode indicator
			Override	BOOL	override mode indicator
		Hand	BOOL	hand mode indicator	
autotune	PIDE_AUTOTUNE	structure	(optional) autotune structure (function block only)		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the CVEU parameter		none			

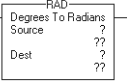

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																									
<b>PMUL Pulse Multiplier</b>	not available		PMUL (PMUL_tag) ;	The PMUL instruction provides an interface from a position input module, such as a resolver or encoder feedback module, to the digital system by computing the change in input from one scan to the next. By selecting a specific word size, you configure the PMUL instruction to differentiate through the rollover boundary in a continuous and linear fashion.																									
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PMUL tag</td> <td>PULSE MULTIPLIER</td> <td>structure</td> <td>PMUL structure (default parameters):</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4"> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Multiplier</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>output of the instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	PMUL tag	PULSE MULTIPLIER	structure	PMUL structure (default parameters):	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Multiplier</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>output of the instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Parameter:	Type:	Description:	In	DINT	analog signal input to the instruction	Multiplier	DINT	multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out	Out	REAL	output of the instruction	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Arithmetic Status Flags:</th> <th>Major Faults:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>set for the Out parameter</td> <td>none</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:	set for the Out parameter
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																										
PMUL tag	PULSE MULTIPLIER	structure	PMUL structure (default parameters):																										
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>In</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>analog signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Multiplier</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>output of the instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Parameter:	Type:	Description:	In	DINT	analog signal input to the instruction	Multiplier	DINT	multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out	Out	REAL	output of the instruction														
Parameter:	Type:	Description:																											
In	DINT	analog signal input to the instruction																											
Multiplier	DINT	multiplier; divide this value by 100,000 to control the ratio of In to Out																											
Out	REAL	output of the instruction																											
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:																												
set for the Out parameter	none																												

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>POSP</b> <b>Position</b> <b>Proportional</b>	not available		POSP (POSP_tag) ;	The POSP instruction opens or closes a device by pulsing open or close contacts at a user defined cycle time with a pulse width proportional to the difference between the desired and actual positions.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
POSP tag	POSITION_PROP	structure	POSP structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
SP	REAL	setpoint value; must use the same engineering units as Position		
Position	REAL	position feedback		
OpenedFB	BOOL	opened feedback; when set, the open output is not allowed to turn on		
ClosedFB	BOOL	closed feedback; when set, the close output is not allowed to turn on		
OpenOut	BOOL	output is pulsed to open the device		
CloseOut	BOOL	output is pulsed to close the device		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the PositionPercent parameter	none			


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>POVR Equipment Phase Override Command</b>		not available	POVR (PhaseName, Command, Result);	Gives the hold, stop, or abort command to an equipment phase. Overrides all owners of the equipment phase. The command works even if RSLogix 5000 software, RSBizWare Batch software, or another program already own the equipment phase.
	<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>
	Phase Name	phase	name of the equipment phase	Equipment phase that you want to change to a different state
	Command	command	name of the command	One of these commands for the equipment phase: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hold</li> <li>• stop</li> <li>• abort</li> </ul>
	Result	DINT	immediate tag	To let the instruction return a code for its success/failure, enter a DINT tag in which to store the result code. Otherwise, enter 0.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PPD Equipment Phase Paused</b>		not available	PPD ( );	The PPD instruction lets you stop execution at a specific step (breakpoint) to test and troubleshoot your logic.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected		none	

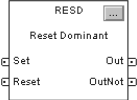
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PRNP Equipment Phase New Parameters</b>		not available	PRNP ( );	The PRNP instruction clears the NewInputParameters bit of the equipment phase.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PSC Phase State Complete</b>		not available	PSC ( );	The PSC instruction signals the completion of a phase state routine.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>PXRQ Equipment Phase External Request</b>		not available	PXRQ(Phase_Instruction, External_Request, Data_Value);	The PXRQ instruction sends a request to RSBizWare Batch software.
	<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b> Phase Instruction	<b>Type:</b> PHASE_INSTRUC TION	<b>Format:</b> tag
	External Request	request	name	type of request
	Data Value	DINT	array tag	parameters of the request
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b> not affected	<b>Major Faults:</b> none		



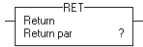

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:								
<b>RAD</b> <b>Radians</b>			<code>dest := RAD(source);</code>	The RAD instruction converts the Source (in degrees) to radians and stores the result in the Destination.								
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	value to convert to radians							
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result							
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>								
	RAD tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	RAD structure (default parameters):								
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>input to the conversion instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dest</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>result of the conversion instruction</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	Source	REAL	input to the conversion instruction	Dest	REAL
Parameter:	Type:	Description:										
Source	REAL	input to the conversion instruction										
Dest	REAL	result of the conversion instruction										
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>										
affected		none										

## 11 - 154

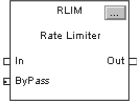
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RES</b> <b>Reset</b>		not available	not available	The RES instruction resets a TIMER, COUNTER, or CONTROL structure.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	structure	TIMER CONTROL COUNTER	tag	structure to reset
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>	
	not affected		none	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RESD</b> <b>Reset</b> <b>Dominant</b>	not available		RESD (RESD_tag) ;	The RESD instruction uses Set and Reset inputs to control latched outputs. The Reset input has precedence over the Set input.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
RESD tag	DOMINANT_ RESET	structure	RESD structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
Set	BOOL	set input to the instruction		
Reset	BOOL	reset input to the instruction		
Out	BOOL	output of the instruction		
OutNot	BOOL	inverted output of the instruction		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
not affected	none			

## 11 - 156

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RET</b> Return			RET (ReturnPar) ;	The RET instruction is an optional instruction that exchanges data with the JSR instruction.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Return parameter	BOOL SINT INT structure	immediate tag array tag	data from this routine that you want to copy to the corresponding return parameter in the JSR instruction	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		4	31	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• JSR instruction has fewer input parameters than SBR instruction</li> <li>• RET instruction has fewer return parameters than JSR instruction</li> <li>• main routine contains a RET instruction</li> </ul>
		4	0	JSR instruction jumps to a fault routine



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RLIM</b> Rate Limiter	not available		RLIM (RLIM_tag) ;	The RLIM instruction limits the amount of change of a signal over time.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
RLIM tag	RATE_LIMITER	structure	RLIM structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
ByPass	BOOL	request to bypass the algorithm; when set, Out = In		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RMPS</b> <b>Ramp/Soak</b>	not available		RMPS (RMPS_tag, RampValue, SoakValue, SoakTime) ;	The RMPS instruction provides for a number of segments of alternating ramp and soak periods.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																					
RMPS tag	RAMP_SOAK	structure	RMPS structure (default parameters):																					
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PV</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>scaled analog temperature signal input to the instruction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CurrentSegProg</td> <td>DINT</td> <td>current segment program value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OutProg</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>output program value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SoakTimeProg</td> <td>REAL</td> <td>soak time program value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ProgProgReq</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>program program request</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ProgOperReq</td> <td>BOOL</td> <td>program operator request</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter:	Type:	Description:	PV	REAL	scaled analog temperature signal input to the instruction	CurrentSegProg	DINT	current segment program value	OutProg	REAL	output program value	SoakTimeProg	REAL	soak time program value	ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request	ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request
Parameter:	Type:	Description:																						
PV	REAL	scaled analog temperature signal input to the instruction																						
CurrentSegProg	DINT	current segment program value																						
OutProg	REAL	output program value																						
SoakTimeProg	REAL	soak time program value																						
ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request																						
ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request																						

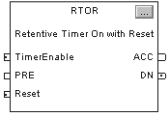
continued

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>RMPS</b> <b>Ramp/Soak</b> (continued)			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			ProgAutoReq	BOOL	program auto mode request
			ProgManualReq	BOOL	program manual mode request
			ProgHoldReq	BOOL	program hold mode request
			Out	REAL	output of the instruction
			CurrentSeg	DINT	current segment number
			SoakTimeLeft	REAL	soak time left
			GuarRampOn	BOOL	guaranteed ramp status
			GuarSoakOn	BOOL	guaranteed soak status
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator
			Auto	BOOL	auto mode indicator
			Manual	BOOL	manual mode indicator
			Hold	BOOL	hold mode indicator
RampValue	REAL	array	ramp value array; enter a ramp value (time in minutes) for each segment (0 to NumberOfSegs-1)		
SoakValue	REAL	array	soak value array; enter a soak value for each segment (0 to NumberOfSegs-1); the array must be at least as large as NumberOfSegs		
SoakTime	REAL	array	soak time array; enter a soak time (time in minutes) for each segment (0 to NumberOfSegs-1)		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			

## 11 - 160

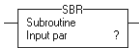

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RTO</b> <b>Retentive</b> <b>Timer On</b>		see RTOR	see RTOR	The RTO instruction is a retentive timer that accumulates time when the instruction is enabled.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Timer	TIMER	tag	timer structure	
Preset	DINT	immediate	how long to delay (accumulate time)	
Accum	DINT	immediate	number of msec the timer has counted; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 34	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.PRE &lt; 0</li> <li>.ACC &lt; 0</li> </ul>




Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>RTOR</b> <b>Retentive</b> <b>Timer On with</b> <b>Reset</b>	see RTO		RTOR (RTOR_tag) ;	The RTOR instruction is a retentive timer that accumulates time when TimerEnable is set.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
RTOR tag	FBD_TIMER	structure	RTOR structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			TimerEnable	BOOL	if cleared, enables the timer to run and accumulate time
			PRE	DINT	timer preset value in 1msec units
			Reset	BOOL	request to reset the timer
			ACC	BOOL	accumulated time in milliseconds
			DN	BOOL	timing done output. Indicates when the ACC ≥ PRE
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
not affected		none			

## 11 - 162

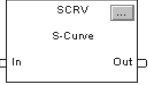
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>RTOS REAL to String</b>		not available	RTOS (Source, Dest) ;	The RTOS instruction produces the ASCII representation of a REAL value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	REAL	tag	tag that contains the REAL value	
Destination	string	tag	tag to store the ASCII value	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		4	51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		4	52	The output string is larger than the destination. Create a new string data type that is large enough for the output string. Use the new string data type as the data type for the destination.


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SBR Subroutine</b>			SBR (InputPar) ;	The SBR instruction is an optional instruction that exchanges data with the JSR instruction.
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
Input parameter	BOOL SINT INT structure	DINT REAL tag array tag	tag	tag in this routine into which you want to copy the corresponding input parameter from the JSR instruction
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
affected		4	31	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• JSR instruction has fewer input parameters than SBR instruction</li> <li>• RET instruction has fewer return parameters than JSR instruction</li> <li>• main routine contains a RET instruction</li> </ul>
		4	0	JSR instruction jumps to a fault routine




Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SCL</b> <b>Scale</b>	not available		SCL (SCL_tag) ;	The SCL instruction converts an unscaled input value to a floating point value in engineering units.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
SCL tag	SCALE	structure	SCL structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	output that represents the scaled value of the analog input		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

## 11 - 166

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SCRV</b> <b>S-Curve</b>	not available		SCRV (SCRV_tag) ;	The SCR V instruction performs a ramp function with an added jerk rate. The jerk rate is the maximum rate of change of the rate used to ramp output to input.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
SCRV tag	S_CURVE	structure	SCRV structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
Out	REAL	output of the instruction		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		

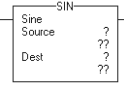

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>SEL Selector</b>	not available		not available	The SEL instruction uses a digital input to select one of two inputs.	
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
SEL tag	SELECT	structure	SEL structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In1	REAL	first analog signal input to the instruction
			In2	REAL	second analog signal input to the instruction
			SelectorIn	BOOL	input that selects between In1 and In2
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>				
set for the Out parameter	none				

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SETD</b> <b>Set Dominant</b>	not available		SETD (SETD_tag) ;	The SETD instruction uses Set and Reset inputs to control latched outputs. The Set input has precedence over the Reset input.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
SETD tag	DOMINANT_SET	structure	SETD structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
Set	BOOL	Set input to the instruction		
Reset	BOOL	Reset input to the instruction		
Out	BOOL	output of the instruction		
OutNot	BOOL	inverted output of the instruction		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

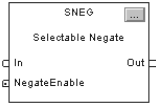



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SFP</b> <b>Pause SFC</b>		not available	SFP (SFCRoutineName, TargetState);	The SFP instruction pauses an SFC routine.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
SFCRoutine Name	ROUTINE	name	SFC routine to pause	
TargetState	DINT	immediate tag	select executing (enter 0) or paused (enter 1)	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		Type 4	Code 85	the routine type is not an SFC routine
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SFR</b> <b>Reset SFC</b>		not available	SFR (SFCRoutineName StepName);	The SFR instruction resets the execution of a SFC routine at a specified step.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
SFCRoutine Name	ROUTINE	name	SFC routine to reset	
Step Name	SFC_STEP	tag	target step where to resume execution	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		Type 4	Code 85	the routine type is not an SFC routine
		Type 4	Code 89	specified target step does not exist in the SFC routine

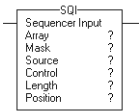
# 11 - 170

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>SIN</b> <b>Sine</b>			<code>dest := SIN(source);</code>	The SIN instruction takes the sine of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the sine of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SIN tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	SIN structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	REAL	input to the math instruction		
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SIZE</b> <b>Size in</b> <b>Elements</b>		not available	not available	The SIZE instruction finds the size of a dimension of an array.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	SINT INT REAL structure string	array tag	array on which the instruction is to operate	
Dimension to vary	DINT	immediate (0, 1, 2)	which dimension to use enter 0 (first dimension), 1 (second dimension), or 2 (third dimension)	
Size	SINT INT REAL	tag	tag to store the number of elements in the specified dimension of the array	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SNEG</b> <b>Selected</b> <b>Negate</b>	not available	 <p>The diagram shows a rectangular function block labeled 'SNEG' with a 'Selectable Negate' label inside. It has two input terminals on the left: 'In' and 'NegateEnable'. It has one output terminal on the right labeled 'Out'.</p>	SNEG (SNEG_tag) ;	The SNEG instruction uses a digital input to select between the input value and the negative of the input value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
SNEG tag	SELECTABLE_ NEGATE	structure	SNEG structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction		
NegateEnable	BOOL	when NegateEnable is set, the instruction sets Out to the negative value of In		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		

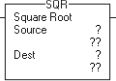
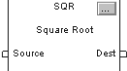
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>SOC</b> <b>Second-Order Controller</b>	not available		<code>SOC(SOC_tag);</code>	The SOC instruction is designed for use in closed loop control systems in a similar manner to the PI instruction. The SOC instruction provides a gain term, a first order lag, and a second order lead.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
SOC tag	SEC_ORDER_CONTROLLER	structure	SOC structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
			Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the Out parameter		none			

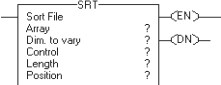
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SQI</b> <b>Sequencer</b> <b>Input</b>		not available	not available	The SQI instruction detects when a step is complete in a sequence pair of SQO/SQI instructions.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	DINT	array tag	sequencer array; specify the first element of the sequencer array <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Mask	SINT INT	tag immediate	which bits to block or pass	
Source	SINT INT	tag	input data for the sequencer array	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the SQO and SQL instructions	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the Array (sequencer table) to compare	
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the array; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

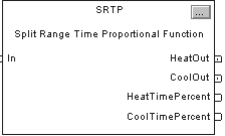
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SQL Sequencer Load</b>		not available	not available	The SQL instruction loads reference conditions into a sequencer array.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	DINT	array tag	sequencer array; specify the first element of the sequencer array <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Source	SINT INT	tag immediate	input data to load into the sequencer array	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the SQI and SQO instructions	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the Array (sequencer table) to load	
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the array; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 20	Length > size of Array

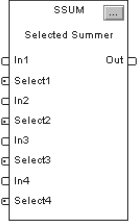
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SQO</b> <b>Sequencer</b> <b>Output</b>		not available	not available	The SQO instruction sets output conditions for the next step of a sequence pair of SQO/SQI instructions.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	DINT	array tag	sequencer array; specify the first element of the sequencer array <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript	
Mask	SINT DINT INT	tag immediate	which bits to block or pass	
Destination	DINT	tag	output data from the sequencer array	
Control	CONTROL	tag	control structure for the operation; typically use the same CONTROL as the SQI and SQL instructions	
Length	DINT	immediate	number of elements in the Array (sequencer table) to output	
Position	DINT	immediate	current position in the array; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>SQR</b> <b>Square Root</b>			<code>dest := SQR(source);</code>	The SQR instruction computes the square root of the Source and places the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the square root of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SQR tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	SQR structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	REAL	find the square root of this value		
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

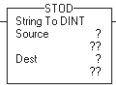
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SRT</b> <b>File Sort</b>		not available	<code>SRT (Array, Dimtovary, Control);</code>	The SRT instruction sorts a set of values in one dimension (Dim to vary) of the Array into ascending order.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	SINT INT	DINT REAL	array tag	array to sort; specify the first element of the group of elements to sort <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
Dimension to vary	DINT	immediate (0, 1, 2)		which dimension to use the order is: array[dim_0,dim_1,dim_2] then array[dim_0,dim_1] then array[dim_0]
Control	CONTROL	tag		control structure for the operation
Length	DINT	immediate		number of elements of the array to sort
Position	DINT	immediate		current element in the array; initial value is typically 0
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		Type 4	Code 20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>instruction tries to access data outside of the array boundaries</li> <li>dimension to vary does not exist for the specified array</li> </ul>
		Type 4	Code 21	.POS < 0 or .LEN < 0

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>S RTP</b> <b>Split Range</b> <b>Proportional</b>	not available		S RTP (S RTP_tag) ;	The S RTP instruction takes the 0-100% output of a PID loop and drives heating and cooling digital output contacts with a periodic pulse. This instruction controls applications such as barrel temperature control on extrusion machines.	
	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
S RTP tag	S PLIT_RANGE	structure	S RTP structure (default parameters):		
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			In	REAL	analog signal input asking for heating or cooling
			HeatOut	BOOL	heating output pulse
			CoolOut	BOOL	cooling output pulse
			HeatTimePercent	REAL	calculated percent of the current cycle that the HeatOut will be on
			CoolTimePercent	REAL	calculated percent of the current cycle that the CoolOut will be on
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
set for the HeatTimePercent and CoolTimePercent parameters		none			

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SSUM</b> <b>Selected</b> <b>Summer</b>	not available		SSUM (SSUM_tag) ;	The SSUM instruction uses boolean inputs to select real inputs to be algebraically summed.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
SSUM tag	SELECTABLE_ SUMMER	structure	SSUM structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
Inx	REAL	input, where x = 1-4		
Selectx	BOOL	selector signal for associated input, where x = 1-4		
Out	REAL	calculated output of the algorithm		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
set for the Out parameter	none			

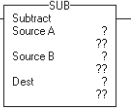
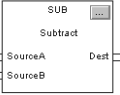
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:																
<b>SSV</b> <b>Set System Value</b>		not available	<pre>SSV (ClassName, InstanceName, AttributeName, Source) ;</pre>	The GSV/SSV instructions get and set controller system data that is stored in objects.																
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand:</th> <th>Type:</th> <th>Format:</th> <th>Description:</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Class name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>name of object</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Instance name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>name of specific object, when object requires name</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Attribute Name</td> <td>na</td> <td>name</td> <td>attribute of object; data type depends on the attribute you select</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source</td> <td>SINT INT DINT REAL</td> <td>tag</td> <td>tag that contains data you want to copy to the attribute</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	Class name	na	name	name of object	Instance name	na	name	name of specific object, when object requires name	Attribute Name	na	name
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:																	
Class name	na	name	name of object																	
Instance name	na	name	name of specific object, when object requires name																	
Attribute Name	na	name	attribute of object; data type depends on the attribute you select																	
Source	SINT INT DINT REAL	tag	tag that contains data you want to copy to the attribute																	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>																		
not affected		Type 4	Code 5	invalid object address																
		Type 4	Code 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specified an object that does not support GSV/SSV</li> <li>invalid attribute</li> <li>did not supply enough information for an SSV instruction</li> </ul>																
		Type 4	Code 7	the GSV destination was not large enough to hold the requested data																

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>STD</b> <b>Standard Deviation</b>		not available	not available	The STD instruction calculates the standard deviation of a set of values in one dimension of the Array and stores the result in the Destination.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Array	SINT INT	DINT REAL	array tag	find the standard deviation of the values in this array specify the first element of the group of elements to use in calculating the standard deviation <b>do not</b> use CONTROL.POS in the subscript
Dimension to vary	DINT	immediate (0, 1, 2)		which dimension to use the order is: array[dim_0,dim_1,dim_2] then array[dim_0,dim_1] then array[dim_0]
Destination	REAL	tag		result of the operation
Control	CONTROL	tag		control structure for the operation
Length	DINT	immediate		number of elements of the array to use in calculating the standard deviation
Position	DINT	immediate		current element in the array; initial value is typically 0
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		Type 4	Code 20	dimension to vary does not exist for the specified array
		Type 4	Code 21	.POS < 0 or .LEN < 0

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>STOD</b> <b>String to DINT</b>		not available	STOD (Source, Dest) ;	The STOD instruction converts the ASCII representation of an integer to an integer or REAL value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	string	tag	tag that contains the value in ASCII	
Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the integer value; if the Source value is a floating-point number, the instruction converts only the non-fractional part of the number (regardless of the destination data type).
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		Type 4	Code 51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		Type 4	Code 53	The output number is beyond the limits of the destination data type. Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>reduce the size of the ASCII value</li> <li>use a larger data type for the destination</li> </ul>

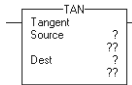
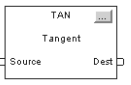

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>STOR</b> <b>String to REAL</b>		not available	STOR (Source, Dest) ;	The STOR instruction converts the ASCII representation of a floating-point value to a REAL value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	string	tag	tag that contains the value in ASCII	
Destination	REAL	tag	tag to store the REAL value	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
affected		Type 4	Code 51	The LEN value of the string tag is greater than the DATA size of the string tag. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>that no instruction is writing to the LEN member of the string tag.</li> <li>in the LEN value, you entered the number of characters that the string contains.</li> </ul>
		Type 4	Code 53	The output number is beyond the limits of the destination data type. Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>reduce the size of the ASCII value</li> <li>use a larger data type for the destination</li> </ul>



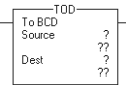
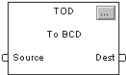
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>SUB</b> <b>Subtract</b>			<code>dest := sourceA - sourceB;</code>	The SUB instruction subtracts Source B from Source A and places the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source A	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	value from which to subtract Source B
	Source B	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	value to subtract from Source A
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	SUB tag	FBD_MATH	structure	SUB structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	SourceA	REAL	value from which to subtract Source B		
	SourceB	REAL	value to subtract from Source A		
	Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>				
affected	none				

## 11 - 186

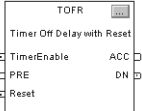
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>SWPB</b> <b>Swap Byte</b>		not available	SWPB (Source, OrderMode, Dest);	The SWPB instruction rearranges the bytes of a value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Source	INT DINT	REAL	tag	tag that contains the bytes that you want to rearrange
Order Mode	na	REVERSE WORD HIGH/LOW		how you want to change the order of the bytes
Destination	INT DINT	REAL	tag	tag to store the bytes in the new order
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>TAN Tangent</b>			<code>dest := TAN(source);</code>	The TAN instruction takes the tangent of the Source value (in radians) and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	find the tangent of this value
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	TAN tag	FBD_MATH_ ADVANCED	structure	TAN structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
		Source	REAL	input to the math instruction	
		Dest	REAL	result of the math instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			
<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
<b>TND Temporary End</b>		not available	<code>TND ();</code>	The TND instruction acts as a boundary.	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	not affected	none			

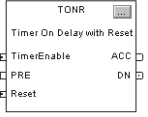
## 11 - 188

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>TOD</b> <b>Convert to BCD</b>			not available	The TOD instruction converts a decimal value ( $0 \leq \text{Source} \leq 99,999,999$ ) to a BCD value and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source	SINT DINT INT	immediate tag	value to convert	
	Destination	SINT DINT INT	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	TOD tag	FBD_CONVERT	structure	TOD structure (default parameters):	
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Source	DINT	input to the conversion instruction
			Dest	DINT	result of the conversion instruction
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	Type 4	Code 4	Source < 0	

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>TOF</b> <b>Timer Off Delay</b>		see TOFR	see TOFR	The TOF instruction is a non-retentive timer that accumulates time when the instruction is enabled (rung-condition-in is false).
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Timer	TIMER	tag	timer structure	
Preset	DINT	immediate	how long to delay (accumulate time)	
Accum	DINT	immediate	number of msec the timer has counted; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 34	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.PRE &lt; 0</li> <li>.ACC &lt; 0</li> </ul>

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>TOFR</b> <b>Timer Off Delay</b> <b>with Reset</b>	see TOF	 <p>The diagram shows a rectangular function block labeled 'TOFR' with a small 'OFF' icon in the top right corner. Below the label is the text 'Timer Off Delay with Reset'. On the left side, there are three input terminals: 'TimerEnable', 'PRE', and 'Reset', each with a small square symbol. On the right side, there are two output terminals: 'ACC' and 'DN', each with a small square symbol.</p>	TOFR (TOFR_tag) ;	The TOFR instruction is a non-retentive timer that accumulates time when TimerEnable is cleared.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
TOFR tag	FBD_TIMER	structure	TOFR structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
TimerEnable	BOOL	if cleared, enables the timer to run and accumulate time		
PRE	DINT	timer preset value in 1msec units		
Reset	BOOL	request to reset the timer		
ACC	BOOL	accumulated time in milliseconds		
DN	BOOL	timing done output. Indicates when the ACC ≥ PRE		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>TON</b> Timer On Delay		see TONR	see TONR	The TON instruction is a non-retentive timer that accumulates time when the instruction is enabled (rung-condition-in is true).
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
Timer	TIMER	tag	timer structure	
Preset	DINT	immediate	how long to delay (accumulate time)	
Accum	DINT	immediate	number of msec the timer has counted; initial value is typically 0	
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		Type 4	Code 34	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .PRE &lt; 0</li> <li>• .ACC &lt; 0</li> </ul>

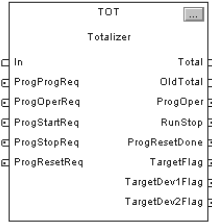
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>TONR Timer On Delay with Reset</b>	see TON		TONR (TONR_tag) ;	The TONR instruction is a non-retentive timer that accumulates time when TimerEnable is set.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
TONR tag	FBD_TIMER	structure	TONR structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
TimerEnable	BOOL	if cleared, enables the timer to run and accumulate time		
PRE	DINT	timer preset value in 1msec units		
reset	BOOL	request to reset the timer		
ACC	BOOL	accumulated time in milliseconds		
DN	BOOL	timing done output. Indicates when the ACC ≥ PRE		
Arithmetic Status Flags:	Major Faults:			
not affected	none			



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

**TOT  
Totalizer**

not available



TOT (TOT\_tag) ;

The TOT instruction provides a time-scaled accumulation of an analog input value.

Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
----------	-------	---------	--------------

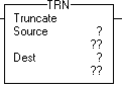
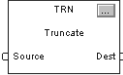
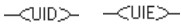
TOT tag	TOTALIZER	structure	TOT structure (default parameters):
---------	-----------	-----------	-------------------------------------


Parameter:	Type:	Description:
In	REAL	analog signal input to the instruction
ProgProgReq	BOOL	program program request
ProgOperReq	BOOL	program operator request
ProgStartReq	BOOL	program start request
ProgStopRequest	BOOL	program stop request
ProgResetReq	BOOL	program reset request

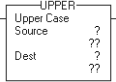

continued

## 11 - 194


Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:		Description:
<b>TOT Totalizer</b> (continued)			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
			Total	REAL	the totalized value if In
			OldTotal	REAL	the value of the total before a reset occurred
			ProgOper	BOOL	program/operator control indicator
			RunStop	BOOL	the indicator of the operational state of the totalizer
			ProgResetDone	BOOL	the indicator that the TOT instruction has completed a program reset request
			TargetFlag	BOOL	the flag for Total; set when Total $\geq$ Target.
			TargetDev1Flag	BOOL	the flag for TargetDev1; set when Total $\geq$ Target - TargetDev1
			TargetDev2Flag	BOOL	the flag for TargetDev2; set when Total $\geq$ Target - TargetDev2
		<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
		set for the Total parameter	none		



Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>TRN Truncate</b>			<code>dest := TRUNC(source);</code>	The TRN instruction removes (truncates) the fractional part of the Source and stores the result in the Destination.
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source	REAL	immediate tag	value to truncate
	Destination	SINT INT DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	TRN tag	FBD_ TRUNCATE	structure	TRN structure (default parameters):
			<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>
		Source	REAL	input to the conversion instruction.
		Dest	DINT	result of the math instruction.
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	affected	none		
<b>Instruction:</b>	<b>Relay Ladder:</b>	<b>Function Block:</b>	<b>Structured Text:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
<b>UID User Interrupt Disable</b>		not available	<code>UID ();</code>  <code>UIE ();</code>	The UID instruction and the UIE instruction work together to prevent a small number of critical rungs from being interrupted by other tasks.
<b>UIE User Interrupt Enable</b>	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>		
	not affected	none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>UPDN</b> <b>Up/Down</b> <b>Accumulator</b>	not available		UPDN (UPDN_tag) ;	The UPDN instruction adds and subtracts two inputs into an accumulated value.
Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:	
UPDN tag	UP_DOWN_ ACCUM	structure	UPDN structure (default parameters):	
Parameter:	Type:	Description:		
InPlus	REAL	input added to the accumulator		
InMinus	REAL	input subtracted from the accumulator		
Out	REAL	output of the instruction		
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
set for the Out parameter		none		

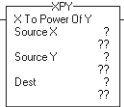
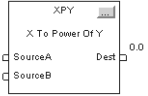
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>UPPER</b> <b>Upper Case</b>		not available	UPPER (Source, Dest) ;	The UPPER instruction converts the alphabetical characters in a string to upper case characters.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
Source	string	tag	tag that contains the characters that you want to convert to upper case	
Destination	string	tag	tag to store the characters in upper case	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		
Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>XIC</b> <b>Examine If</b> <b>Closed</b>		not available	IF data_bit THEN <statement>; END_IF;	The XIC instruction examines the data bit to see if it is set.
<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
data bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be tested	
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>		
not affected		none		

## 11 - 198

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:
<b>XIO Examine If Open</b>		not available	<pre>IF NOT data_bit THEN   &lt;statement&gt;; END_IF;</pre>	The XIO instruction examines the data bit to see if it is cleared.
	Operand:	Type:	Format:	Description:
	data bit	BOOL	tag	bit to be tested
Arithmetic Status Flags:		Major Faults:		
not affected		none		

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>XOR</b> <b>Bitwise</b> <b>Exclusive OR</b>			<code>dest := sourceA XOR sourceB</code>	The XOR instruction performs a bitwise XOR operation using the bits in Source A and Source B and places the result in the Destination.	
	<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>
	Source A	SINT INT	DINT	immediate tag	value to XOR with Source B
	Source B	SINT INT	DINT	immediate tag	value to XOR with Source A
	Destination	SINT INT	DINT	tag	tag to store the result
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	XOR tag	FBD_LOGICAL	structure	XOR structure (default parameters):	
		<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
		SourceA	DINT	value to XOR with Source B	
		SourceB	DINT	value to XOR with Source A	
		Dest	DINT	result of the instruction	
	<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>	<b>Major Faults:</b>			
	affected	none			

# 11 - 200

Instruction:	Relay Ladder:	Function Block:	Structured Text:	Description:	
<b>XPY</b> <b>X to the</b> <b>Power of Y</b>			<code>dest := sourceX ** sourceY;</code>	The XPY instruction takes Source A (X) to the power of Source B (Y) and stores the result in the Destination.	
<b>Relay Ladder and Structured Text</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	Source X	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	base value
	Source Y	SINT INT	DINT REAL	immediate tag	exponent
Destination	SINT INT	DINT REAL	tag	tag to store the result	
<b>Function Block</b>	<b>Operand:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Format:</b>	<b>Description:</b>	
	XPY tag	FBD_MATH	structure	LOXPY structure (default parameters):	
	<b>Parameter:</b>	<b>Type:</b>	<b>Description:</b>		
	Source X	REAL	immediate tag	base value	
Source Y	REAL	immediate tag	exponent		
Dest	REAL	tag	tag to store the result		
<b>Arithmetic Status Flags:</b>		<b>Major Faults:</b>			
affected		Type 4	Code 4	Source X is negative and Source Y is not an integer value	



---

## Rockwell Automation Support

Rockwell Automation provides technical information on the web to assist you in using our products. At <http://support.rockwellautomation.com>, you can find technical manuals, a knowledge base of FAQs, technical and application notes, sample code and links to software service packs, and a MySupport feature that you can customize to make the best use of these tools.

For an additional level of technical phone support for installation, configuration and troubleshooting, we offer TechConnect Support programs. For more information, contact your local distributor or Rockwell Automation representative, or visit <http://support.rockwellautomation.com>.

## Installation Assistance

If you experience a problem with a hardware module within the first 24 hours of installation, please review the information that's contained in this manual. You can also contact a special Customer Support number for initial help in getting your module up and running:

United States	1.440.646.3223 Monday – Friday, 8am – 5pm EST
Outside United States	Please contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for any technical support issues.

## New Product Satisfaction Return

Rockwell tests all of our products to ensure that they are fully operational when shipped from the manufacturing facility. However, if your product is not functioning and needs to be returned:

United States	Contact your distributor. You must provide a Customer Support case number (see phone number above to obtain one) to your distributor in order to complete the return process.
Outside United States	Please contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for return procedure.



[www.rockwellautomation.com](http://www.rockwellautomation.com)

---

### Power, Control and Information Solutions Headquarters

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000, Fax: (1) 414.382.4444

Europe/Middle East/Africa: Rockwell Automation, Vorstlaan/Boulevard du Souverain 36, 1170 Brussels, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2 663 0600, Fax: (32) 2 663 0640

Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, Level 14, Core F, Cyberport 3, 100 Cyberport Road, Hong Kong, Tel: (852) 2887 4788, Fax: (852) 2508 1846

Publication 1756-QR107C-EN-P - June 2005

Supersedes Publication 1756-QR107B-EN-P - June 2003

PN 957955-66

Copyright © 2005 Rockwell Automation. All rights reserved. Printed in the U.S.A.